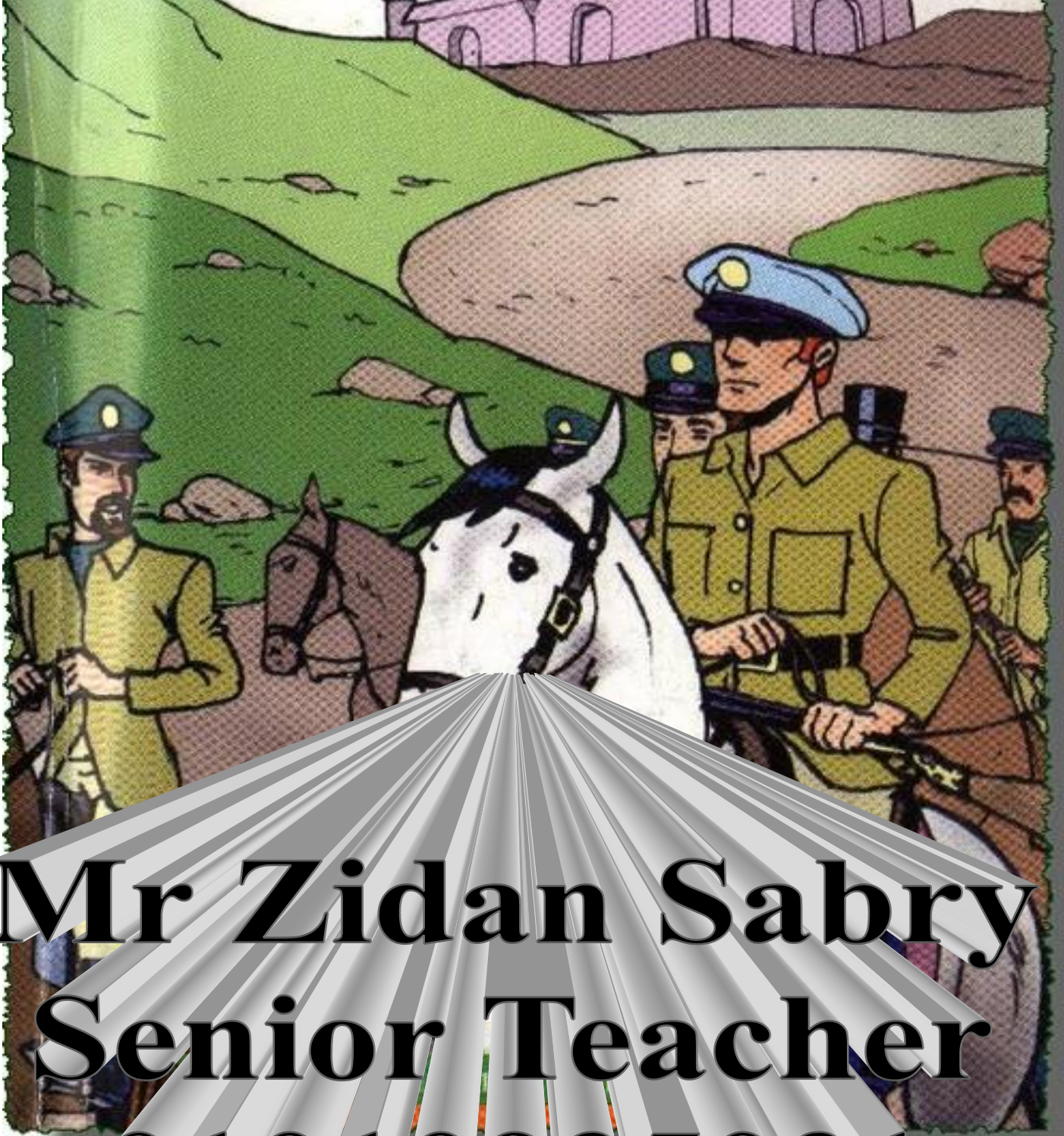


# The Prisoner Of Zenda



**Mr Zidan Sabry**  
**Senior Teacher**  
**01010935031**

الدكتور زيدان  
٠١٠١٠٩٣٥٠٣١



## **The Author**

- It was **Anthony Hope Hawkins** who wrote "**The Prisoner of Zenda**".
- Anthony Hope was born in 1863 in London, England.
- Hope was educated and got first-class degrees in classics, philosophy and ancient history.
- Hope maintained **حفظ** a great interest in politics **السياسة** throughout his life.
- Hope published around thirty fictional works in his lifetime, but it was The Prisoner of Zenda that made him famous, enabling him to become a full-time writer and literary man.
- Hope died of throat cancer in 1933.

## **The Characters**

### **Rudolf Rassendyll**

- ❖ He is rich Englishman.
- ❖ He is 29 years old. The narrator of the story.
- ❖ He is well-educated and intelligent.
- ❖ He does not believe in working for a living because he is comfortable with his inheritance and social status.
- ❖ He is fun-loving and adventurous He is kind and compassionate.
- ❖ He agrees to impersonate Rudolf the Fifth to help him save his throne **العرش**.
- ❖ He is a man of honour. He is a brave warrior **محارب** who risks **يخاطر** his life to rescue the King.

### **King Rudolf the Fifth** (Rudolf Elephberg)

- ❖ He's the king of Ruritania who loves good wine and hunting.
- ❖ He's not respected by many of his people as he is always abroad.
- ❖ He's Carefree and humorous. He laughs loudly and easily.
- ❖ He's kidnapped and imprisoned by his brother, Duke Michael.
- ❖ He's Saved by Rudolf and regains his throne.
- ❖ He becomes a more responsible King after his traumatic ordeal.
- ❖ He marries Princess Flavia.

### **Colonel Sapt**

- ❖ He's short and with a grey moustache. He's the King's chief adviser.
- ❖ He's firm but kind .He is wise , intelligent, and careful. He's dutiful, loyal and faithful to King Rudolf.
- ❖ He persuades Rudolf to impersonate the King to save his throne.
- ❖ He helps and guides Rudolf in all his formal duties.
- ❖ He's brave warrior and would not hesitate to sacrifice his life for the King.
- ❖ He believes in fate as he believes it is fates that have sent Rudolf to save the King.

### **Fritz von Tarlenheim**

- ❖ He is the king's (Rudolf ) right-hand man.He is a loyal friend and advisor to the King.
- ❖ He helps Rudolf in his role as an impersonator.He helps Colonel Sapt to rescue the King.
- ❖ He is and quieter than Colonel Sapt.He is brave and daring in the rescue mission to save the King.

### **Princess Flavia**

- ❖ She is a beautiful princess who is engaged to the King.
- ❖ She is a cousin to King Rudolf the Fifth.
- ❖ She is observant and She notices some differences between Rudolf Rassendyll and King Rudolf.
- ❖ She does not know that Rudolf Rassendyll is an impersonator. She worries about Rudolf's safety and welfare.
- ❖ She will not hesitate to go to Rudolf when she hears that he is ill or in trouble.
- ❖ She marries the King and becomes the queen of Ruritania.

### **Duke Michael**

- ❖ He is half-brother of Rudolf the Fifth. He is the Duke of Strelsau in Ruritania.
- ❖ He spends a lot of time with the people. He is popular and many people want him to be King.
- ❖ He ambitious, scheming, cunning, wicked, evil and cruel. He kidnapped King Rudolf with the intention of killing him.
- ❖ He has loyal supporters especially his devoted 'Famous Six '.
- ❖ He is killed by Rupert of Hentzau.

### **Antoinette de Mauban**

- ❖ She is beautiful, tall and dark French widow. She is about 30 years old and is deeply in love with the Duke.
- ❖ she tries to find a way to stop Duke Michael from becoming King and therefore marrying Princess Flavia.
- ❖ She is aware of Duke's wickedness and evil scheme to kill the King.
- ❖ She betrays تخون the Duke when she informs Rudolf of the Duke's plan to kill the king
- ❖ She helps Rudolf to escape from his enemies.

### **The 'Famous Six Men'**

- ❖ These are the personal bodyguards of the Duke .

- ❖ They are fearless, ruthless, cruel and will not hesitate to kill.
- ❖ They consist of three Ruritarians and three foreigners.
- ❖ They are involved in the kidnapping of the King. Three of them guard the King and three follows the Duke wherever he goes.

The Six are

- 1) **De Gautet** -> French
- 2) **Bersonin** -> Belgian
- 3) **Detchard** -> Englishman
- 4) **Rupert of Hentzau** (leader) -> Ruritanian
- 5) **Lauvengram** -> Ruritanian
- 6) **Krafstein** -> Ruritanian

### **Robert Rassendyll (Lord Burlesdon)**

- ❖ He is Rudolf Rassendyll's brother.

### **Rose Rassendyll**

- ❖ She is Rudolf Rassendyll's sister-in-law.

**George Featherly** He is an English friend of Rudolf Rassendyll who works in the Paris embassy.

### **Bertram Bertrand**

- ❖ He is an English journalist who works in Paris

### **Marshal Strakencz**

- ❖ He is an important person in the King of Ruritania's army.

**Josef** He is a servant to the king. He was killed by Michael's men.

**Freyler** He is a servant at the King's palace.

**Sir Jacob Borrodaile** He is an important Englishman who is about to become an ambassador.

**Johann Holf** He is a servant who works in the Castle of Zenda.

**Max Holf** He is Johann's brother who works for Duke Michael.

### **Places of Incidents**

The setting in the novel The Prisoner of Zenda is in **Ruritania**, a country in Central Europe. The adventures in the story take place in **Strelsau** (Capital of Ruritania) and **Zenda** (a small town with an ancient castle).





# Chapter 1

dining room	حجرة الطعام	prepare for	يستعد / يُجهز لـ
egg spoon	ملقعة لفصل البيض المسلوق عن القشرة	The Alps	جبال الألب
position in society	مكانة في المجتمع	social problems	مشكلات اجتماعية
Lord	لورد (لقب أوروبي)	Get into politics	يعمل بالسياسة
Countess	كونتيسة (لقب أوروبي)	book	يحجز
Except	ماعدا	check	يفحص
Member	عضو	call on	يزور (شخص)
Annoy	يزعج / يضايق	The French Capital	العاصمة الفرنسية
Explain	يشرح / يفسر	journalist	صحفي
German University	جامعة ألمانية	wealth	ثروة
German	اللغة الألمانية	ambition	طمح
Italian	اللغة الإيطالية	Duke	دوق (لقب أوروبي)
Spanish	اللغة الأسبانية	half-brother	أخ غير شقيق
Gun	بندقية	favourite son	ابن مفضل
Swordsman	مبارز بالسيف	coronation	حفل تتويج
riding horses	ركوب الخيل	Get on the train	يستقل القطار
Different from	مختلف عن	Get off the train	ينزل من القطار
Realize	يدرك	fashionably-dressed	أنيقة في ملابسها
Responsibilities	مسئوليات	wonder	يتساءل
Opportunities	فرص	further	أبعد
Ambassador	سفير	borders	حدود
Embassy	سفارة	guards	حراس
Refuse	يرفض	passports	جوازات السفر
sister-in-law	زوجة الأخ	stare at	يُحملك في
Moreover	وعلاوة على ذلك	In two days' time	في خلال يومين
sound interesting	يبدو ممتعاً	excitement	متعة
be in a position to	يكون في وضع يمكنه من	particular	خاص / محدد
the royal family	الأسرة المالكة	castle	قلعة
make a promise	يعد	remain	يبقى
the Elphbergs	عائلة إلفبرج	Inn	فندق صغير
have an interest in	لديه اهتمام بـ	responsible for	مسئول عن
in fact	في الحقيقة	forest	غابة
Paintings	صور / لوحات	hotel owner	صاحب الفندق
Descendants	أحفاد	servant	خادم
a straight nose	أنف مستقيم	care about	يهتم بـ
Appearance	مظهر/شكل	stranger	غريب
make a decision	يتخذ قرار	hunting lodge	منزل صغير يُقيم به الصيادون مؤقتاً
The Times Newspaper	جريدة التايمز	step back in surprise	يتراجع في دهشة
Celebrations	احتفالات	stairs	سلم
joyous occasion	مناسبة بهيجة	Conversation	محادثة
Event	حدث هام	relaxed	مسترخ / مستريح

wealthy trader	تاجر ثري	enormous	هائل
Contact	يتصل بـ	luggage	الحقائب
set off	يبدأ الرحلة	tough	صارم - متشدد
Moat	خندق مائي (يُحيط بقلعة مثلا)	medium height	متوسط الطول
Mansion	قصر - منزل أحد الأثرياء	extraordinary	رائع - استثنائي
country home	منزل ريفي	Identical twins	توأم متطابق
Drawbridge	جسر متحرك	personality	شخصية
lie against a tree	ينام مستندا إلى شجرة	sword	سيف
well-defended	جيد التحصين	amazement	دهشة - استغراب
Shade	الظل	alike	متشابه

## The Text

**1-** I was eating breakfast in the dining room of my brother's house one sunny morning, thinking about what I would do that week, when my brother's wife Rose came into the room.

**"Rudolf, you're 29 years old,"** she said.

**"Are you ever going to do anything useful?"**

**"Rose,"** I answered, putting down my egg spoon, **"why should I do anything? I have nearly enough money to do anything I want to** (no one ever has quite enough money to do that, of course), **and I enjoy an important position in society: my brother's Lord Burlesdon and you are a countess."**

في صباح يوم مشمس، كنت أتناول الإفطار في غرفة الطعام في منزل أخي وأفكر فيما سأفعله ذلك الأسبوع عندما دخلت الحجرة زوجة أخي، روز. قالت روز، "رودولف، أنت الآن تبلغ من العمر تسع وعشرون عاما، ألا تتوي أبدا أن تفعل شيئا مفيدا؟" فأجبت وأنا أضع ملعقة البيض على المنضدة، "لماذا ينبغي علي أن أفعل أي شيء يا روز؟ أنا أمتلك من المال تقريبا ما يكفي لعمل أي شيء أريده (بالطبع لا أحد يملك مطلقا مالا كافيا لعمل ذلك)، كما أنني أتمتع بمركز مرموق في المجتمع، فأخي هو اللورد بيرلسدون وأنت كونتيسة."

**2-"But you've done nothing except....."**

**"Be lazy? It's true. I'm a member of the Rassendyll family and our family don't need to do things."**

This annoyed Rose, because her family were rich but less important than the Rassendylls. At this moment, my brother Lord Burlesdon (who we were happy to call simply Robert) came into the room.

**"Robert, I'm so happy you're back!"** cried Rose.

**"What's the matter, my dear?"** Robert asked her.

**"She's angry because she thinks I don't do anything,"** I explained to my brother.

فقالت روز، "ولكنك لم تفعل أي شيء عدا ....."

قاطعتها قائلة، "عدا أن أكون كسولا؟ هذا حقيقي. فأنا أحد أعضاء عائلة راسيندل وعائلتنا ليست بحاجة إلى القيام بعمل أي شيء." هذا الكلام أغضب روز حيث أن عائلتها كانت غنية ولكنها لم تكن عائلة مرموقة كمعائلة راسيندل. في هذه اللحظة، دخل إلى الحجرة أخي اللورد بيرلسدون (الذي كان يسعدنا أن نناديه ببساطة باسم روبرت)، فصاحت روز، "روبرت، أنا سعيدة للغاية بعودتك." فسألها روبرت، "ما الأمر يا عزيزتي؟" فشرحت الأمر لأخي قائلة، "إنها غاضبة لأنها تعتقد أنني لا أقوم بعمل أي شيء."

**3-**At this point, I should explain that I had not been lazy all my life. I had studied hard and learned a lot when I was at a German school and German university. I spoke German as well as I spoke English, and I also knew how

to speak French, Italian and Spanish. I was good with a gun and a strong swordsman. I was also very good at riding a horse.

عند هذه النقطة، يجب أن أشرح أنني لم أكن كسولا طوال حياتي، فأنا درستُ على نحوٍ جاد وتعلمت الكثير عندما كنت في مدرسة ألمانية وجامعة ألمانية. وتحدثتُ الألمانية بالإضافة إلى الإنجليزية، وكذلك تعلمتُ كيف أتحدث الفرنسية والإيطالية والأسبانية. وكنت ماهرا في التصويب بالمسدس وكنت مبارزا قويا بالسيف، كما أنني كنت بارعا جدا في ركوب الخيل.

**4- "It's not just your red hair that makes you different from your brother," said Rose. "He also realises his position in society has responsibilities. You only see opportunities in yours."**

**"To a man like me, opportunities are responsibilities," I explained. "Good, because I have some news for you," said Rose. "Sir Jacob Borrodaile tells me he'll offer you a real opportunity. He's going to be an ambassador in six months' time, and he says he's happy for you to work for him. I hope you'll take this job, Rudolf."**

- قالت روز، "إن شعرك الأحمر ليس هو فقط ما يجعلك مختلفا عن أخيك، فهو يدرك أيضا أن مركزه في المجتمع له مسؤوليات. أما أنت فتري في مركزك الاجتماعي الفرص فقط." فقلت لها مفسرا، "بالنسبة لرجل مثلي، الفرص تعتبر مسؤوليات." فقالت روز، "هذا جيد، لأن عندي بعض الأخبار لك. أبلغني السيد جاكوب بورودايل أنه سيعرض عليك فرصة حقيقية. فهو سيصبح سفيرا في خلال ستة أشهر، وهو يقول أنه يسعده أن تعمل معه. أتمنى أن تحصل على هذه الوظيفة يا رودولف."

**5-My sister-in-law has a way of asking people to do things which is impossible to refuse. Moreover, I thought this job sounded quite interesting, so I said, "If in six months' time I'm in a position to take this job, then I'll certainly say yes."**

**"Oh, Rudolf, how good of you!" said Rose. "Where will he be working?" I asked. "Sir Jacob doesn't know which country it will be, but he's sure it will be a good embassy."**

**"For you I'll do it, even if it's a terrible embassy," I replied.**

- زوجة أخي لها أسلوب تطلب به من الآخرين عمل الأشياء من المستحيل رفضه. علاوة على ذلك، كان في اعتقادي أن هذه الوظيفة مثيرة للاهتمام للغاية، لذلك قلت، "إذا كنتُ في خلال ستة أشهر في وضع يجعلني أحصل على هذه الوظيفة، فأنا بالتأكيد سأقبلها." فقالت روز، "إنه شيء رائع منك يا رودولف." فسألته قائلا، "وأين سيعمل؟" فقالت، "السيد جاكوب لا يعرف في أي دولة سيكون العمل، ولكنه متأكد أنها ستكون سفارة جيدة." فقلت، "سوف أحصل على هذه الوظيفة لأجل خاطرك أنت حتى ولو كانت سفارة في غاية السوء."

**6-Now, I had made my promise to Rose, but there were still six months to go before the job would start, and I began to think about what I could do in this time. I decided that I would visit Ruritania, a small country in the middle of Europe. My family have always had an interest in that country because in 1733, Countess Amelia Rassendyll married a member of the Ruritanian royal family, the Elphbergs. In fact my brother has paintings of her and her descendants on his walls: many of them have the same red hair and straight noses as the Elphbergs; I am the latest one to have the appearance of the Ruritanian royal family.**

الآن قطعْتُ وعدا على نفسي أمام روز، ولكن كان هناك ستة أشهر للانطلاق قبل أن أبدأ الوظيفة. وبدأت أفكر فيما يمكن أن أفعله في هذه المدة. قررتُ أن أزور روريتانيا، وهي دولة صغيرة في وسط أوروبا. عائلتي كانت دائما مهتمة بهذه الدولة لأنه في عام ١٧٣٣ تزوجت الكونتيسة أميليا راسيندل من أحد أعضاء العائلة المالكة لدولة روريتانيا، عائلة إلفبرج. في الواقع، يضع أخي لوحات للكونتيسة وأحفادها على جدران منزله. يوجد لدى الكثيرين منهم نفس الشعر الأحمر والأنف المستقيمة التي يتسم بها أفراد عائلة إلفبرج. أنا آخر فرد في عائلتي له نفس شكل العائلة المالكة لروريتانيا.

7-My decision was helped a few days later when I read in *The Times* newspaper that Rudolf the Fifth was to become King of Ruritania in the next three weeks, and that amazing celebrations were planned for this joyous occasion. I thought how fantastic it would be to see such an event and began to prepare for my journey.

I do not like to tell people where I go on my travels, so I told Rose that I was going walking in the Alps. I did not want her to think I was being lazy either, so I told her I was going to write a book about social problems in the country.

حدث شيء بعدها بأيام قليلة دعم قراري بالسفر إلى روريتانيا، فقد قرأت في جريدة التايمز أن رودولف الخامس كان سيصبح ملكا على روريتانيا في خلال الأسابيع الثلاثة القادمة، وأنه تم الإعداد لاحتفالات رائعة بهذه المناسبة السعيدة. فكرت أن مشاهدة مثل هذا الحدث سيكون شيئا رائعا، وبدأت أعد لرحلتي. أنا لا أحب أن أخبر أحدا عن الأماكن التي أذهب إليها في رحلاتي، لذلك فقد أخبرت روز أنني ذاهب لممارسة رياضة المشي في جبال الألب. ولأنني لم أكن أريدها أن تعتقد أنني كنت كسولا أيضا، فأخبرتها أنني أنوي تأليف كتاب عن المشكلات الاجتماعية في الريف.

**8-"You're going to write a book? That would be such a good thing to do, wouldn't it, Robert?"** said Rose.

**"Yes, indeed. Writing a book's the best way to get into politics,"** agreed Robert, and he should know, as he has written many books himself.

**"You're right,"** I said to them both. However, I had no plan to really write a book, which shows how little we know about the future. Because here I am now, writing a book as I had promised to do, even if the book has nothing to do with the social problems in the Alps. But let me begin near the start of my journey to Ruritania.

- قالت روز، "هل تنوي تأليف كتاب؟ هذا سيكون شيئا جيدا تقوم به، أليس كذلك يا روبرت؟" فوافقها روبرت الرأي قائلا، "نعم، بالطبع. إن تأليف كتاب هو أفضل طريقة للانخراط في السياسة." بالتأكيد روبرت يعرف ذلك حيث أنه شخصا قام بتأليف العديد من الكتب. فقلت لهما، "معكما حق." وبالرغم من ذلك، لم تكن لدي نية أن أقوم بتأليف كتاب حقا، وهذا يبين أن معرفتنا بالمستقبل ضئيلة للغاية. فما هو أنا الآن أقوم بتأليف كتاب كما وعدت، على الرغم أن هذا الكتاب لا علاقة له بالمشكلات الاجتماعية في منطقة الألب. ولكن اسمحوا لي أن أبدأ بالحديث رحلتي إلى روريتانيا. عن بداية

9-My Uncle William always said that no man should ever pass through Paris without spending twenty-four hours in the city, so I took his advice and booked a night at The Continental Hotel. As soon as I had checked in, I called on some old friends that I knew in the French capital: George Featherly, who worked at the embassy, and Bertram Bertrand, who was now a famous journalist in the city. That evening, we all ate in a restaurant and they told me all about the latest exciting events in Paris.

- كان عمي ويليام يقول دائما أنه لا ينبغي على أي شخص أن يمر على باريس دون أن يقضي بها أربع وعشرين ساعة، لذلك عملت بنصيحته وحجزت ليلة في فندق كونتيننتال. بمجرد وصولي للفندق، زرت بعض أصدقائي القدامى الذين أعرفهم في العاصمة الفرنسية وهما جورج فيذرلي، الذي كان يعمل بالسفارة، وبرتtram برتراند، الذي كان الآن صحفيا شهيرا في باريس. ذلك المساء، تناولنا الطعام في أحد المطاعم، وأخبروني بكل الأحداث المثيرة التي وقعت مؤخرا في باريس.

**10-"We've had quite a few important people visiting the city recently,"** said Bertram.

**"Anyone I'd know?"** I asked.

**"Well, I met Antoinette du Mauban today,"** Bertram replied. **"You've probably heard of her. She's a lady who's well known for her wealth**



**and ambition. But she's leaving Paris today, we don't know where she's going to next."**

**"So why did she come to Paris?"** I asked.

**"She was a guest of the Duke of Strelsau,"** said George. **"I met him at the embassy yesterday. He's the half-brother to the King of Ruritania. People say he was his father's favourite son. He's gone back for the coronation, although I don't think he'll enjoy it very much because he probably wishes he were the king. I don't think he likes being only a Duke."**

**"I hear he's a clever man, though,"** said Bertram.

**"He's extremely clever, I'd say,"** agreed George.

• قال برترام، "لقد كان هناك القليل جدا من المشاهير الذين قاموا بزيارة باريس مؤخرا".

فسألته، "هل بينهم أي شخص أعرفه؟" فأجاب برترام، "حسنا، أنا قابلت أنطوانيت دو مويان اليوم، ربما تكون قد سمعت عنها. إنها سيدة نبيلة تشتهر بثروتها وتطلعاتها، ولكنها سوف تغادر باريس اليوم ولا نعرف إلى أين ستكون وجهتها القادمة." فسألته، "ولماذا جاءت إلى باريس؟" فقال جورج، "كانت ضيفة عند دوق ستريلسو. أنا قابلته في السفارة بالأمس. إنه الأخ غير الشقيق لملك روريتانيا. يقول الناس أنه كان الابن المفضل لدى أبيه. ولقد عاد لحضور حفل التتويج بالرغم أنني لا أعتقد أنه سيكون مستمتعا بهذه المناسبة لأنه يود لو أنه هو الملك. أنا لا أعتقد أنه يحب أن يكون مجرد دوق." وقال برترام، "ورغم ذلك أنا سمعت أنه رجل ماهر." فوافقه جورج قائلا، "أتفق معك تماما أنه ماهر للغاية".

**11-**The next day, George came with me to the station and I bought a ticket to my next stop, Dresden. I did not tell him that I was going to Ruritania. If I had, the news would have gone immediately to Bertram and then it would have been in all the newspapers within days.

• في اليوم التالي، أتى جورج معي إلى المحطة واشترت تذكرة إلى محطتي التالية مدينة دريزدن. لم أخبر جورج أنني كنت ذاهبا إلى روريتانيا، لأنني لو فعلت ذلك لانتقل الخبر على الفور إلى برترام ومن ثم لانتقل إلى كل الصحف في غضون أيام.

**12-**Just as I was about to get on the train, George suddenly smiled and walked away to talk to a beautiful, tall and fashionably dressed woman of about thirty who was standing at the ticket office with two younger women. I thought these must be her servants.

**"You have an important person to travel with,"** George told me when he



returned a few minutes later. **"That's Antoinette du Mauban and she's also going to Dresden."**

• بينما كنت على وشك ركوب القطار، ابتسم جورج فجأة وذهب ليتحدث مع امرأة جميلة وطويلة القامة ترتدي ملابس عصرية تبلغ من العمر حوالي ثلاثين عاما، والتي كانت تقف عند مكتب بيع التذاكر مع امرأتين شابتين، كانتا في تقديري خادمتين لها.

عندما عاد جورج بعد دقائق قليلة قال لي، "إنك ستسافر مع إحدى الشخصيات المرموقة. إنها أنطوانيت دو مويان وهي أيضا متجهة إلى دريزدن."

**13-**Paris was soon behind me. It was a long and boring journey and I wondered if I would see Antoinette du Mauban in the dining car when I ate in

the train that evening, or perhaps at breakfast the next morning. However, I did not see the lady again until the following day, when both she and I got on the next train from Dresden to Ruritania. She was further up the train, however, and did not see me.

سريعا، تركنا باريس خلفنا. كانت الرحلة طويلة ومملة وتساءلت إذا كنت سأرى أنطوانيت دو موبان في عربة الطعام عندما أتناول طعامي في القطار ذلك المساء، أو ربما أراها وقت الإفطار في الصباح التالي. ومع ذلك لم أر السيدة مرة أخرى حتى اليوم التالي عندما صعد كلانا إلى القطار المتجه من دريزدن إلى روريتانيا. ولكنها كانت تبعد عني بمسافة في القطار فلم تراني.

**14-**A few hours later, the train arrived at the Ruritanian border where we stopped so the guards could check our passports. I was surprised when the guards stared at me and my passport for some time before letting me into the country. Once in Ruritania, I bought a newspaper and read that the King's coronation was to be in two days' time, which was much earlier than I had thought. The newspaper described the excitement in the country and in particular the capital city, Strelsau, where it said all the hotels were full with people who wanted to see the event.

بعد ساعات قليلة، وصل القطار إلى حدود روريتانيا حيث توقفنا لكي يفحص الحراس جوازات سفرنا. اندهشت عندما حدّق الحراس في وجهي وفي جواز سفري لبعض الوقت قبل أن يسمحوا لي بدخول البلد. بمجرد أن دخلت روريتانيا، اشتريت جريدة وقرأت فيها أن حفل تتويج الملك كان سيتم في خلال يومين. هذا التوقيت كان مبكرا جدا عما كنت أعتقد. وصفت الجريدة حالة الإثارة الموجودة في الدولة لا سيما في العاصمة ستريلسو، حيث قالت الجريدة أن كل الفنادق كانت تمتلئ بالأشخاص الذين كانوا يريدون مشاهدة هذه المناسبة.

**15-**On reading this, I decided it would be best to stop at Zenda, a small town eighty kilometres from the capital, and about ten kilometres from the border. Here I could walk in the hills and see the town's famous castle, then I could take the train for the day to Srelsau to see the coronation. As I got off the train at Zenda, I saw Antoinette du Mauban, who remained on the train for its journey to the capital, but she did not look at me.

عندما قرأت ذلك، قررت أنه من الأفضل أن أتوقف في زندا، وهي مدينة صغيرة تبعد ثمانين كيلومترا عن العاصمة، وحوالي عشر كيلومترات عن الحدود. في هذه المدينة أستطيع أن أتمشى في التلال وأشاهد القلعة الشهيرة بالمدينة، ثم أركب القطار في ذات اليوم إلى ستريلسو لأشاهد حفل التتويج. بينما كنت أهبط من القطار في زندا، رأيت أنطوانيت دو موبان التي ظلت في القطار لتواصل الرحلة إلى العاصمة، ولكنها لم تنظر إلي.

**16-**I was welcomed at the inn in Zenda by an old woman who ran it with her two daughters. She said she was not very interested in what happened in the capital, but she loved the Duke of Strelsau, who she called Duke Michael. He was the man who was responsible for the land around Zenda and its castle. In fact, the hotel owner said she wished the Duke was the new King and not his brother.

رحبت بي في الفندق الريفي امرأة عجوز التي كانت تديره مع ابنتيها. قالت لي أنها لم تكن مهتمة بما يحدث في العاصمة ولكنها كانت تحب دوق ستريلسو الذي كانت تطلق عليه الدوق مايكل. إنه كان الرجل المسئول عن الأرض داخل زندا والقلعة الموجودة بها. في الحقيقة، كانت صاحبة الفندق تتمنى لو أن الدوق كان هو الملك الجديد وليس أخيه.

**17-**"*We all know Duke Michael,*" she explained. "*He's always lived in Ruritania and he cares about the people, so people like him. As for the King, well, he's almost a stranger. He's been abroad for most of his life and not many people even know what he looks like. Now the King's staying in a hunting lodge in the forest, very near to Zenda. From there he'll travel to the capital for his coronation.*"

- شرحت المرأة قائلة، "نحن جميعا نعرف الدوق مايكل، فهو كان دائما يعيش في روريتانيا ويهتم بأمر شعبها، ولذلك يحبه الناس. أما بالنسبة للملك، حسنا، إنه تقريبا غريب عنا. فقد قضى معظم حياته خارج البلاد كما أن الكثير من الناس لا يعرفون حتى شكله. الآن الملك يقيم في كوخ يستخدمه عند الصيد في الغابة، وهو قريب جدا من زندا، وسوف يسافر من هناك إلى العاصمة من أجل تتويجه."

**18-** I was interested to hear this, and decided I would walk in the forest the next day so that I might see him. **"I wish he'd stay there in the forest,"** continued the woman.

**"People say he only likes hunting and good food. He should let the Duke become our King. And there are many others who think the same."**

**"Well I don't like Duke Michael,"** said her older daughter. **"They say the King has red hair just like you!"**

**"Many men have red hair like me,"** I laughed.

**"How do you know the King has red hair?"** The old woman asked her daughter.

**"Johann, the Duke's servant, told me,"** she explained. **"He's seen the King at the hunting lodge."**

- كنت مهتما لسماع ذلك وقررت أن أمشي في الغابة في اليوم التالي لعلّي أراه. واصلت المرأة كلامها قائلة، "أتمنى لو أنه يبقى هناك في الغابة. الناس يقولون أنه يحب فقط الصيد والطعام الجيد. يجب عليه أن يسمح للدوق أن يصبح ملكنا الجديد، وهناك الكثير من الناس الذين لديهم نفس الرأي." فقالت ابنتها الكبرى، "حسنا، أنا لا أحب الدوق مايكل. إنهم يقولون أن الملك له شعر أحمر مثلك تماما." فقلت ضاحكا، "الكثير من الرجال لديهم شعر أحمر مثلي." سألت المرأة العجوز ابنتها، "كيف علمت أن الملك شعره أحمر؟" فشرحت لها الابنة، "أخبرني بذلك جوهان، خادم الدوق، فقد شاهد الملك عند كوخ الصيد."

**19-** **"But why's the King here, if it's the Duke's land?"** I asked.

**"The Duke invited him, sir,"** explained the old lady.

**"The Duke's in Strelsau, preparing for the coronation."**

**"So they are good friends?"**

**"I don't know if you can be good friends if you want the same thing."**

**"What do you mean?"**

**"Duke Michael would like to be King, too, I'm sure."**

**"Well,"** I said **"I feel quite sorry for the Duke, but it's right that the older brother becomes king."**

- سألتهما قائلا، "لماذا يتواجد الملك هنا إذا كانت هذه هي أرض الدوق؟" فشرحت السيدة العجوز، "لقد قام الدوق بدعوته يا سيدي. الدوق موجود في ستريلسو ليقوم بالإعداد لحفل التتويج." فقلت، "هما صديقان إذا؟" فردت العجوز، "لا أعرف إذا كان من الممكن أن تكونا صديقين إذا كنتما تريدان نفس الشيء." قلت لها، "ماذا تقصدين؟" فقالت، "أنا واثقة أن الدوق مايكل يود أن يكون الملك أيضا." فقلت، "حسنا، أنا أشعر بالحزن تماما على الدوق، ولكن من حق الأخ الأكبر أن يصبح هو الملك."

**20-** **"Who's talking of the Duke?"** said a deep voice from outside the door.

**"We have a guest, Johann,"** called the old lady, as a man entered the room.

When he saw me, he took off his hat and stepped back in surprise, as though he had seen something amazing.

**"What's the matter, Johann?"** asked the old lady.

**"This gentleman's come to our country to see the coronation."**

**"It's the red hair,"** said one of the daughters. **"We don't often see it in our country unless you're part of the King's family, the Elphbergs. Many of them have red hair."**

- قال صوت جهير من خارج الباب، "من الذي يتحدث عن الدوق؟" فقالت السيدة العجوز عندما دخل رجلّ الحجرة، "عندنا أحد الضيوف يا جوهان." عندما رأي الرجل، خلع قبعته وتراجع خطوة للخلف مندهشا كما لو أنه رأى شيئا مذهلا. فسألته السيدة العجوز، "ماذا بك يا جوهان؟ لقد حضر هذا السيد النبيل إلى بلدنا لمشاهدة حفل التتويج." فقالت إحدى بناتها، "إنه مندهش من الشعر الأحمر. نحن لا نرى الشعر الأحمر كثيرا في بلدنا إلا إذا كنت جزءا من عائلة الملك، عائلة الفيرج. الكثير منهم شعره أحمر."

**21-**The man continued to stare at me, but said, **"Good evening, sir. I'm sorry, I didn't expect to see any new guests here."**

**"Don't worry,"** I said.

**"It's late and time I went to bed. I wish you all a good night. Thank you, ladies, for our conversation."** I stood up to go to my room, when Johann suddenly said, **"Sir, have you ever seen our King?"**

**"No, I've never seen him, but I hope to do so on Wednesday at the coronation."**

Johann said no more, but I felt his eyes on me as I walked up the stairs.

- استمر الرجل في التحديق في، ولكنه قال، "مساء الخير يا سيدي. أنا آسف، فلم أكن أتوقع أن أرى أي ضيوف جدد هنا." فقلت له، "لا عليك." الوقت تأخر. وحين موعد نومي. طابت ليلتكم جميعا. شكرا لكم سيداتي على محادثتنا." وقفت لكي أذهب إلى غرفتي عندما قال جوهان فجأة، "سيدي، هل سبق لك رؤية ملكنا؟" فقلت له، "لا، لم يسبق لي رؤيته مطلقا، ولكني آمل أن أفعل ذلك يوم الأربعاء في حفل التتويج." لم يقل جوهان أي شيء آخر، ولكنني شعرت أنه يحمل في بصره بينما كنت أضع درجات السلم.

**22-**The next morning, Johann seemed much relaxed. When he heard that I was going to Strelsau, he said I could stay at his sister's house. She was married to a wealthy trader and she had invited him to stay with them for the coronation, but he was unable to go. I was very happy to have this opportunity and accepted his offer, so he said he would contact his sister at once and tell her to expect me that day.

- في الصباح التالي، بدا جوهان أقل توترا بكثير. عندما علم أنني ذاهب إلى ستريلسو قال أن بإمكانني أن أقيم في منزل شقيقته التي كانت متزوجة من أحد التجار الأثرياء ودعت جوهان للبقاء معهما لحضور التتويج، لكنه لم يتمكن من الذهاب. كنت سعيدا للغاية بهذه الفرصة وقبلت ذلك العرض. قال لي جوهان أنه سيتصل بشقيقته على الفور ويطلب منها أن تنتظرن في ذلك اليوم.

**23-**I decided, however, that I still wanted to see the forest where the King was staying, so first I planned to walk for sixteen kilometres through the forest to the next station along the line, where I could catch a train to the capital. I did not tell Johann about this plan, as I did not think it would be important if I arrived at his sister's later in the day. So I sent my luggage on to the station and said goodbye to the old lady and her daughters, and set off up the hill towards the castle. After that, it was a short walk to get into the forest.

- رغم ذلك، قررت أنني مازلت أرغب في مشاهدة الغابة التي كان يقيم فيها الملك، لذلك خططت في البداية أن أمشي عبر الغابة لمسافة ستة عشر كيلومترا على طول الطريق حتى المحطة التالية حيث يمكنني أن أركب قطارا إلى العاصمة. لم أخبر جوهان بهذا الترتيب لأنني لم أكن أعتقد أن وصولي إلى منزل شقيقته متأخرا ذلك اليوم شيئا ذا أهمية. لذلك، أرسلت حقائبي إلى المحطة وودعت السيدة العجوز وابنتيها ثم بدأت الرحلة صعودا إلى التل باتجاه القلعة. بعد ذلك، كانت هناك مسافة قصيرة أقطعها سيرا على الأقدام حتى أدخل الغابة.

**24-**Half an hour later, I reached the castle. It was very old but well built, with a moat all around it. Behind it was a large modern mansion, which was used by the Duke of Strelsau as his country home. The mansion was reached by a wide road, but the old castle could only be reached by a drawbridge between it and the mansion. I was pleased to see that the Duke had such a well-defended house, even if he were not to become King.

- بعد ذلك بنصف ساعة، وصلت إلى القلعة. كانت قديمة جدا ولكن كان بناؤها متينا، ويحيطها خندق مائي من كل الجوانب. خلف القلعة كان هناك قصر حديث والذي كان يستخدمه دوق ستريلسو كمنزله الريفى. كان يتم الوصول إلى القصر بواسطة طريق عريض، ولكن كان يمكن الوصول إلى القلعة القديمة فقط عن طريق جسر متحرك يربط بين القلعة والقصر. كنت سعيدا عندما رأيت أن الدوق يمتلك مثل هذا المنزل جيد التحصين على الرغم أنه لن يصبح الملك.

**25-**Soon I reached the dark forest and I walked for about an hour, pleased that the tall trees gave me cool shade: not much sun reached the ground through the many leaves. It was a beautiful place and after a time I decided to rest by lying against one of the enormous trees. It was so quiet and peaceful in the forest that I soon fell into a deep sleep, forgetting all about the train I should have caught to Strelsau and my luggage that would be waiting at the station. I was just dreaming about living in the Castle of Zenda when a voice woke me:

**"Why, look at at him! It's amazing! He looks just like the King!"**

- وصلت إلى الغابة المظلمة بسرعة ومشيت فيها لمدة ساعة تقريبا. كنت مسرورا لأن الأشجار العالية كانت تمنحني ظلا يبعث على البرودة، فلم تكن الشمس تصل كثيرا إلى الأرض بسبب أوراق الأشجار الكثيرة. كان المكان جميلا، وبعد فترة من الوقت، قررت أن أستريح متكئا على إحدى الأشجار الضخمة. كان الجو هادئا جدا وبعث على الطمأنينة في الغابة لدرجة أنني دخلت في سبات عميق، ونسيت كل شيء بخصوص القطار الذي كان علي أن أركبه إلى ستريلسو، وكذلك حقائبي التي كانت تنتظرنى في المحطة. كنت أحلم في منامي أنني أسكن في قلعة زندا عندما استيقظت على صوت ما يقول، "يا للعجب، أنظر إليه! هذا مذهل! أنه يشبه الملك تماما!"

**26-**I opened my eyes slowly and found two men looking at me. Both carried guns and were dressed for hunting. One of them was short but looked very tough with light blue eyes, and he looked like a soldier. The other was younger, thin and of medium height, and he looked like a gentleman. I later found out that my guesses were both correct.

- فتحت عيني ببطء ووجدت رجلين ينظران إلي. كان يحمل كلا منهما بندقية ويرتديان ملابس الصيد. كان أحدهما قصيرا ولكنه بدا قوي البنية تماما، وكان لون عينيه أزرق فاتح، وكان يبدو وكأنه جندي. أما الآخر فكان أصغر عمرا، ونحيفا ومتوسط الطول، وكان يشبه النبلاء. واكتشفت فيما بعد أن تخميناتي عن كليهما كانت صحيحة.

**27-**The older man walked up to me and raised his hat to me politely, so I stood up. **"He's about the same height as the King, too!"** he said. **"This really is extraordinary. What's your name, sir?"**

**"Perhaps you can tell me what your names are first?"** I asked them. The gentleman stepped forward with a smile and said, **"Of course. This is Colonel Sapt, and my name's Fritz von Tarlenheim. We both work for the King of Ruritania."**

- اقترب مني الرجل الأكبر سنا ورفع قبعته لي بأدب، فوقفْتُ على قدمي. قال الرجل، "إنه تقريبا في نفس طول الملك أيضا، إن هذا شيء مذهل حقا. ما اسمك يا سيدي؟" فسألتهما، "علكما تخبراني باسمكما أولا؟" فتقدم الرجل النبيل خطوة وهو يبتسم وقال، "بالطبع، هذا هو العقيد سابيت، وأنا أدعى فريتز فون تارلنهايم. كلانا يعمل لدى ملك روريتانيا."

**28-**I shook their hands and told them, **"I'm Rudolf Rassendyll. I'm a traveller from England and was an officer in the Queen's army."**

**"Well, we're officers for our King, so we understand each other well!"** said Tarlenheim.

**"Rassendyll, Rassendyll,"** said Colonel Sapt quietly. **"I know! Are you one of the Burlesdons?"**

**"My brother's the new Lord Burlesdon,"** I explained.

**"So, do I really look like the King?"**



"**You could be twins,**" said Fritz.

"**Although you look like identical twins, you do not have identical personalities or skills. You two seem very different. If you were an officer for the Queen's army, Rassendyll, you must be good with a sword!**" laughed Sapt.

- صافحتهما وقتلت لهما، "اسمي رودولف راسيندل. أنا مسافر وقادم من إنجلترا وكنت ضابطا في جيش الملكة." فقال تارلنهايم، "حسنا، نحن ضابطان لدى ملكنا، إذا فنحن نفهم بعضنا جيدا."

قال العقيد سابت بهدوء، "راسيندل، راسيندل، أنا أعرف ذلك، هل أنت أحد أفراد بيرلسدون؟" فشرحت له، "أخي هو اللورد بيرلسدون الجديد." ثم سألتها، "هل أنا بالفعل أشبه الملك؟" فقال فريتز، "ربما تكونا توأمين." وقال سابت ضاحكا، "على الرغم أنكما كالتوأمين المتماثلين إلا أنكما لستما

متماثلين في الشخصية أو في المهارات. أنتما تبدوان مختلفين تماما. فإذا كنت ضابطا في جيش الملكة يا راسيندل، فأنت بالتأكيد بارع في المبارزة بالسيف."

1. "**Is the King not a fighting man?**" I asked.

"**The King likes to live well,**" said Fritz. "**Let's say he prefers eating to action, but he's a kind man and he's our King. We'd do anything for him.**"

"**Perhaps we are alike then,**" I said, "**because I like to have an easy life, too!**"

At this moment, a voice came from the trees behind us. "**Fritz? Where are you, Fritz?**"

Fritz looked worried, and then said quietly to me, "**It's the King! He's coming here now.**"

- سألتها، "أليس الملك رجل مقاتل؟" فقال فريتز، "الملك يحب أن يعيش بشكل جيد. يمكن أن نقول أنه يفضل تناول الطعام أكثر من خوض المعارك، ولكنه رجل

عطوف وهو ملكنا، ونحن على استعداد أن نفعل أي شيء من أجله." فقلت لهما، "إذا ربما نكون متشابهين لأنني أحب أن أعيش الحياة السهلة أيضا." في هذه اللحظة، جاء صوت من بين الأشجار خلفنا يقول، "فريتز، أين أنت يا فريتز؟" بدا القلق على فريتز، ثم قال لي بصوت هادئ، "إنه الملك، إنه قادم إلى هنا الآن."

**29-**A young man then came out from behind a tree in the forest and stood in front of us. As I looked at him, I gave out a loud cry at the same time as he stood back in amazement to see me. Except perhaps for a centimetre or two difference in height, we looked so alike that the King of Ruritania might have been me, Rudolf Rassendyll, and I might have been him, the King of Ruritania.

- ثم ظهر شاب من خلف إحدى الأشجار في الغابة ووقف أمامنا. عندما نظرت إليه، صدرت مني صرخة عالية في نفس الوقت الذي تراجع هو فيه للخلف في حالة ذهول من رؤيتي. فباستثناء وجود اختلاف في الطول بمقدار سنتيمتر أو اثنين، كنا نبدو متماثلين تماما لدرجة أنه من الجائز أن يكون ملك روريتانيا هو أنا، رودولف راسيندل، كما أن من الجائز أن أكون أنا هو، ملك روريتانيا.

## **Questions & Answers**

**1- Who is Rudolf Rassendyll?**

- He is a wealthy English gentleman and the narrator راوي of the story.

**2- What did Rose Rassendyll blame Rudolf for?**

- She blamed him for being lazy and for not doing anything useful.

**3- Why doesn't Rudolf Rassendyll work?**

- Because he has nearly enough money to do anything he wants to, and he enjoys an important position in society. He is a member of the Rassendyll family.

**4- Who is Robert Rassendyll?**

- He is Rudolf Rassendyll's brother and he is Lord Burlesdon.

**5- Why was Rose Rassendyll annoyed when Rudolf said that his family didn't need to do things?**

- Because her family were rich but less important than the Rassendylls.

**6- Rudolf Rassendyll had he not been lazy all his life. Explain.**

- He had studied hard and learned a lot when he was at a German school and university.

- He spoke French, German, Italian and Spanish.

- He was very good at using guns and swords and riding horses.

**7- How was Rudolf Rassendyll different from his brother?**

•Rudolf had red hair, but Robert didn't.

•Robert realized his position in society had responsibilities, but Rudolf only saw opportunities in his position.

**8- What kind of work does Rose suggest Rudolf should do?**

- She suggests that he should work for Sir Jacob Borrodaile who was going to be an ambassador سفير in six months' time.

**9- Who was Sir Jacob Borrodaile?**

-He was to be an ambassador in six months.

**10- Rose Rassendyll was a very persuasive person. Explain.**

- She had a way of asking people to do things which is impossible to refuse. She persuaded Rudolf to work for Sir Jacob Borrodaile.

**11- Why did Rudolf Rassendyll agree to work for Sir Jacob Borrodaile?**

- Because he thought the job sounded quite interesting and Rose persuaded him.

**12- Why has the Rassendyll family been interested in the Elphberg family?**

- Because Countess Amelia Rassendyll married a member of the Ruritanian royal family, the Elphbergs.

**13- Whose paintings من لوحات did Lord Burlesdon have on his walls?**

- He had paintings of Countess Amelia Rassendyll and her descendants.

**14- What did many of Countess Amalia's descendants have in common?**

- Many of them had the same red hair and straight noses as the Elphbergs.

**15- Where did Rassendyll decide to travel to? What did he tell his family about his plans?**

- He decided to visit Ruritania. He told them that he was going walking in the Alps and that he was going to write a book about the social problems in the country.

**16- Why didn't Rudolf tell his family about his plans to travel to Ruritania?**

- Because he never liked to tell them where he was going on his travels.  
- He didn't want them to stop him.

**17- Why did Robert praise Rudolf for his idea of writing a book?**

- Because he thought that Writing a book's the best way to get into politics.

**18- What was Uncle William's advice for those passing through Paris?**

- It was to spend a day in the city.

**19- Who did Rudolf Rassendyll call on in Paris?**

- He called on two old friends: George Featherly, an English friend of Rudolf who worked in the English embassy in Paris and Bertram Bertrand, an English journalist who worked in Paris.

**20- Who was Antoinette de Mauban?**

- She was a French lady who was well known for her wealth and ambition. She was a beautiful, tall and fashionably dressed lady of about thirty. She loved Duke Michael.

**21- Why did Antoinette de Mauban go to Paris?**

- Because she was a guest of the Duke of Strelsau.

**22- Who was Duke Michael Elphberg?**

- He was Rudolf Elphberg's half-brother.

**23- Why didn't George Featherly think that the Duke of Strelsau wouldn't enjoy the coronation of his half brother Rudolf?**

- Because he thought that Michael didn't like being only a duke so he wished he were the king.

**24- Why didn't Rudolf Rassendyll tell George that he was going to Ruritania?**

- If he had told him, he would have told Bertram (a journalist) and the news would have been in all the newspapers within days.

**25- Who did Rudolf see on the train to Dresden?**

- He saw Antoinette de Mauban.

**26- Why did the guards at the Ruritanian border stare at Rudolf Rassendyll?**

- Because he looked very much like Rudolf Elphberg, the King of Ruritania.

**27- What news did Rudolf read in the paper?**

- He read the news that the King's coronation was to be in two days' time and that all the hotels were full with people who wanted to see the king's coronation.

**28- What is the capital of Ruritania?**

- Strelsau is the capital of Ruritania.

**29- Why couldn't Rudolf Rassendyll stay in the capital city, Strelsau?**

- Because all the hotels there were full with people who wanted to see the coronation.

**30- What do you know about Zenda?**

- It's a small town, 80 kilometers from the capital and about 10 kilometers from the border. It has a famous ancient castle.

**31- What does the owner of the inn think of Michael, the Duke of Strelsau?**

- She loves him. She says he has always lived in Ruritania and he cares about the people, so people like him. She wishes the Duke was the King and not his brother.

**32- What does the owner of the inn think of the king?**

- She thinks he is almost a stranger. He's been abroad for most of his life and not many people even know how he looks like.

**33- Why was the King at the Duke's hunting lodge at Zenda?**

- Because Duke Michael invited him to rest there until the day of the coronation.

**34- Why was Duke Michael at Strelsau?**

- He was there to make preparations for the coronation.

**35- Why did Rassendyll decide to walk through the forest the next day?**

- He decided to do that so that he might see the king.

**36- Who is Johann Holf?**

- He is a servant who works in the castle of Zenda.

**37- Why did Johann step back in surprise as soon as he saw Rudolf?**

- Because Rudolf looked exactly like the King.

**38- Why did Johann invite Rudolf Rassendyll to stay at his sister's house?**

- Because all the hotels were full in Strelsau and Johann was unable to go.

**39- The castle of Zenda was well-defended.....illustrate.**

- It was very old but well-built.
- There was a moat all around it.
- Behind There was a large modern mansion. It could only be reached by a drawbridge between it and the mansion.

**40- Who did Rassendyll meet in the forest? Why were they surprised to see him?**

- He met Colonel Sapt and Fritz von Tarlenheim who worked for the king. They were surprised to see him because he looked like the king.

**41- Who is Colonel Sapt? What does he look like?**

- He is an old soldier who works for the King of Ruritania. He is short but looks very tough with light blue eyes. He looks like a soldier.

**42- Who is Fritz von Tarlenheim? What does he look like?**

- He is a gentleman who works for the King of Ruritania. He is thin and of medium height. He looks like a gentleman.

**43- What happened when Rudolf and the king met for the first time? Why?**

- Rudolf gave a loud cry and the King stood back in amazement looking at Rudolf because they looked alike.

**44- How were Rudolf Rassendyll and the King of Ruritania alike?**

- They looked so alike except perhaps for a centimetre or two difference in height. They did not have identical personalities or skills.



# Quotations

## 1- **"Why should I do anything?"**

### 1- **Who said these words to whom?**

- Rudolf Rassendyll said these words to Rose, his brother's wife.

### 2- **When did the speaker say these words?**

- He said these words when Rose wanted to know when he was going to do something.

### 3- **Why doesn't Rudolf the speaker work?**

- Because he has nearly enough money to do anything he wants to, and he enjoys an important position in society.

## 2- **"But you've done nothing except..."**

### 1- **Who said these words to whom?**

- Rose Rassendyll said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

### 2- **What did the speaker blame the addressed person for?**

- She blamed him for being lazy and not doing anything useful.

### 3- **What was the addressed person's reaction?**

- He said he was lazy but he was a member of the Rassendyll family and our family didn't need to do things.

## 3- **"She's angry because she thinks I don't do anything."**

### 1- **Who said these words to whom?**

- Rudolf Rassendyll said these words to his brother, Robert.

### 2- **Where were they?**

- They were in the dining room.

### 3- **When did the speaker say these words?**

- He said these words when Robert asked his wife what the matter was.

## 4- **"He also realises his position in society has responsibilities. You only see opportunities in yours."**

### 1- **Who said these words to whom?**

- Rose said these words to Rudolf Rassendyll.

### 2- **What was the speaker talking about?**

- She was talking about the difference between her husband and Rudolf.

### 3- **What was the addressed person's reply?**

- He said that opportunities are responsibilities.

## 5- **"Good, because I have some news for you"**

### 1- **Who said this to whom?**

- Rose said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

### 2- **What was the good news the speaker had?**

- Sir Jacob Borrodaile was going to be an ambassador and he wanted Rudolf Rassendyll to work for him.

### 3- **What was the addressed person's reaction?**

- He agreed to take the job offered to him.

## 6- **"He's going to be an ambassador in six months' time, and he says he's happy for you to work for him."**

### 1- **Who said these words to whom?**

- Rose said these words to Rudolf Rassendyll.

### 2- **Who is the speaker talking about?**

- She is talking about Sir Jacob Borrodaile.

**3-Did the addressed person accept that offer? Why / Why not?**

- Yes, he did because the job sounded interesting.

**7-"If in six months' time I'm in a position to take this job, then I'll certainly say yes."**

**1- Who said these words to whom?**

- Rudolf Rassendyll said these words to Rose.

**2- Why did the speaker accept the job?**

- Because the job sounded interesting

**3- What did the speaker decide to do during the six months before starting his new job?**

- He decided to visit Ruritania to attend the coronation of King Rudolf the Fifth

**8-"Yes, indeed. Writing a book's the best way to get into politics"**

**1- Who said this to him?**

- Robert Rassendyll said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- When did the speaker say this sentence?**

- The speaker said this sentence when Rudolf said he was going to write a book about social problems in the country.

**3- What kind of books did the addressed person actually write?**

- He wrote a book about his journey to Ruritania.

**9-"He's the half-brother to the King of Ruritania. People say he was his father's favourite son."**

**1- Who said these words to whom?**

- George Featherly said these words to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- Who are they talking about?**

- They're talking about Michael, the Duke of Strelsau.

**3- Why do people like Michael more than the King?**

- Because he has always lived in Ruritania and he cares about the people, but the King is almost a stranger and he's been abroad most of his life.

**10-"I don't think he likes being only a Duke."**

**1- Who said these to whom?**

- George Featherly said these words to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- Who were they talking about?**

- They were talking about the Duke of Strelsau.

**3- Why didn't he like being only a Duke?**

- Because he wished he were the king.

**11-"You have an important person to travel with."**

**1- Who said these words to whom?**

- George Featherly said these words to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- Who was that important person?**

- Antoinette de Mauban.

**3- What was that person travelling?**

- She was travelling to Ruritania.

**12-"He's always lived in Ruritania and he cares about the people, so people like him."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- The owner of the inn said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- Who is the person talking about?**

- Duke Michael.

**3- What more does the speaker think about the person?**

- She wished the Duke was the new King and not his brother and that many people also wanted the same thing.

**13- "He's almost a stranger."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- The owner of the inn said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- Who were they talking about?**

- They were talking about the King of Ruritania.

**3- Why was that person "almost a stranger"?**

- Because he had been abroad for most of his life and not many people even knew what he looked like.

**14 -"How do you know the King has red hair?"**

**1- Who said these words to whom?**

- The old woman said these words to her daughter.

**2- Who told the daughter that the king has red hair?**

- Johann, the Duke's servant.

**3- How did the addressed person know that the king had red hair ?**

- He's seen the King at the hunting lodge."

**15-"I don't know if you can be good friends if you want the same thing."**

**1- Who said these words to whom?**

- The old woman said these words to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- What did the speaker mean by these words?**

- She meant that both the King and the Duke wanted to be King of Ruritania, so they could be enemies, not friends.

**3- According to the addressed person, who had the right to that thing?**

- Rassendyll thought it was the older brother's right to become king.

**16-"This gentleman's come to our country to see the coronation."**

**1- Who said these words to whom?**

- The owner of the inn said these words to Johann.

**2- Who did the speaker mean by "this gentleman"?**

- She meant Rudolf Rassendyll.

**3- Whose coronation was going to take place?**

- The coronation of Rudolf the Fifth, king of Ruritania was going to take place.

**17-"Perhaps we are alike then because I like to have an easy life, too!"**

**1-Who said these words to whom?**

- Rudolf Rassendyll said these words to Fritz.

**2-Where did this conversation take place?**

- It took place in the forest, near the Castle of Zenda.

**3-How were the speaker and the king alike?**

- They both had red hair. They both liked to live well. They both looked like identical twins.

**Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences**

- 1- ☒ Rudolf Rassendyll was thirty-nine and he had done nothing except being lazy.  
☒ Rudolf Rassendyll was twenty-nine and he had done nothing except being lazy.
- 2- ☒ Rudolf Rassendyll thinks that **everybody** ever has enough money to do what they want.  
☒ Rudolf Rassendyll thinks that **no one** ever has enough money to do what they want.

- 3-☒ Rose was happy when Rudolf Rassendyll said that his family didn't need to do things.  
 ☑ Rose was annoyed when Rudolf Rassendyll said that his family didn't need to do things.
- 4-☒ Countess **Amelia**'s family were rich but less important than the Rassendylls.  
 ☑ Countess **Rose**'s family were rich but less important than the Rassendylls.
- 5-☒ **Rudolf** Rassendyll is Lord Burlesdon.  
 ☑ **Robert** Rassendyll is Lord Burlesdon.
- 6-☒ Rudolf Rassendyll studied at a German school and German **embassy**.  
 ☑ Rudolf Rassendyll studied at a German school and German **university**.
- 7-☒ Rudolf speaks **neither** German **nor** English.  
 ☑ Rudolf speaks **both** German **and** English.
- 8-☒ Rudolf was **bad** with a gun and a **weak** swordsman.  
 ☑ Rudolf was **good** with a gun and a **strong** swordsman.
- 9-☒ Rudolf was very good at riding a **bicycle**.  
 ☑ Rudolf was very good at riding a **horse**.
- 10- ☒ It's **only** the red hair that makes Rudolf different from his brother.  
 ☑ It's **not only** the red hair that makes Rudolf different from his brother.
- 11- ☒ **Robert** didn't realize that his position had responsibilities.  
 ☑ **Rudolf** didn't realize that his position had responsibilities.
- 12- ☒ **George** realises his position in society has responsibilities.  
 ☑ **Robert** realises his position in society has responsibilities.
- 13- ☒ Sir Jacob Borrodaile was going to become **a king** in six months' time.  
 ☑ Sir Jacob Borrodaile was going to become **an ambassador** in six months' time.
- 14- ☒ Rose Rassendyll was so persuasive that Rudolf Rassendyll agreed to work for **Josef**.  
 ☑ Rose Rassendyll was so persuasive that Rudolf Rassendyll agreed to work for **Sir Jacob Borrodaile**.
- 15- ☒ Rose Rassendyll has a way of asking people to do things which is **possible** to refuse.  
 ☑ Rose Rassendyll has a way of asking people to do things which is **impossible** to refuse.
- 16- ☒ **Sir Bertram** didn't know which country he would be working in.  
 ☑ **Sir Jacob Borrodaile** didn't know which country he would be working in.
- 17- ☒ Rudolf decided to visit **Dresden**, a small country in the middle of Europe.  
 ☑ Rudolf decided to visit **Ruritania**, a small country in the middle of Europe.
- 18- ☒ Countess **Rose** Rassendyll married a member of the Ruritanian royal family.  
 ☑ Countess **Amelia** Rassendyll married a member of the Ruritanian royal family.
- 19- ☒ Lord Burlesdon had paintings of Countess Amelia Rassendyll and her **ancestors**.  
 ☑ Lord Burlesdon had paintings of Countess Amelia Rassendyll and her **descendants**.
- 20- ☒ Many of Countess Amelia's descendants have the same **black** hair and straight noses as the Elphbergs.  
 ☑ Many of Countess Amelia's descendants have the same **red** hair and straight noses as the Elphbergs.
- 21- Rudolf Rassendyll had the appearance of the **Romanian** royal family.  
 Rudolf Rassendyll had the appearance of the **Ruritanian** royal family.
- 22- ☒ Rudolf Rassendyll got his red hair from one of his **descendants**.  
 ☑ Rudolf Rassendyll got his red hair from one of his **ancestors**.
- 23- ☒ The Times newspaper said that Rudolf the Fifth was to become King of **England** in the next three weeks.  
 ☑ The Times newspaper said that Rudolf the Fifth was to become King of **Ruritania** in the next three weeks.

- 24- ☒ Amazing celebrations were planned in Ruritania for the **murder** of the new King.  
☒ Amazing celebrations were planned in Ruritania for the **coronation** of the new King.
- 25- ☒ Rudolf Rassendyll thought it would be **boring** to see the coronation of the new King.  
☒ Rudolf Rassendyll thought it would be **fantastic** to see the coronation of the new King.
- 26- ☒ Rudolf Rassendyll did not like to tell people where he went on my **studies**.  
☒ Rudolf Rassendyll did not like to tell people where he went on my **travels**.
- 27- ☒ Rudolf Rassendyll **told** his family that he was going to Ruritania.  
☒ Rudolf Rassendyll **didn't tell** his family that he was going to Ruritania.
- 28- ☒ Rudolf Rassendyll did not want Rose to think he was being **active** either.  
☒ Rudolf Rassendyll did not want Rose to think he was being **lazy** either.
- 29- ☒ Rudolf Rassendyll told his family that he was going to write a book about **his visit to Ruritania**.  
☒ Rudolf Rassendyll told his family that he was going to write a book about **the social problems in the country**.
- 30- ☒ Robert said that writing a book is the best way to get into **economics**.  
☒ Robert said that writing a book is the best way to get into **politics**.
- 31- ☒ Rose and Robert **discouraged** Rassendyll from writing a book.  
☒ Rose and Robert **encouraged** Rassendyll from writing a book.
- 32- ☒ Rudolf Rassendyll called on some old **ambassadors** that he knew in Paris.  
☒ Rudolf Rassendyll called on some old **friends** that he knew in Paris.
- 33- ☒ George Featherly is an English friend of **Robert** Rassendyll who works in the Paris embassy.  
☒ George Featherly is an English friend of **Rudolf** Rassendyll who works in the Paris embassy.
- 34- ☒ Bertram Bertrand is an English **diplomat** who works in Paris.  
☒ Bertram Bertrand is an English **journalist** who works in Paris.
- 35- ☒ **Countess Rose** is a lady who's well known for her wealth and ambition.  
☒ **Antoinette de Mauban** is a lady who's well known for her wealth and ambition.
- 36- ☒ Michael Elphberg was the half-**cousin** to the King of Ruritania.  
☒ Michael Elphberg was the half-**brother** to the King of Ruritania.
- 37- ☒ It was said that **Rudolf Elphberg** was his father's favourite son.  
☒ It was said that **Michael Elphberg** was his father's favourite son.
- 38- ☒ The Duke of Strelsau is said to be a **stupid** man.  
☒ The Duke of Strelsau is said to be a **clever** man.
- 39- ☒ At the Ruritanian border, the guards stared at **Rudolf Elphberg**.  
☒ At the Ruritanian border, the guards stared at **Rudolf Rassendyll**.
- 40- ☒ In Ruritania, Rassendyll read in the newspaper that the King's coronation was to be in **three weeks' time**.  
☒ In Ruritania, Rassendyll read in the newspaper that the King's coronation was to be in **two days' time**.
- 41- ☒ **Dresden** was the capital city of Ruritania.  
☒ **Strelsau** was the capital city of Ruritania.
- 42- ☒ The owner of the inn wasn't interested in the **execution** of the new King.  
☒ The owner of the inn wasn't interested in the **coronation** of the new King.
- 43- ☒ **Lord Burlesdon** was responsible for the land around Zenda and its castle.  
☒ **Duke Michael** was responsible for the land around Zenda and its castle.
- 44- ☒ **Robert Rassendyll** has always lived in Ruritania and he cares about the people.  
☒ **Rudolf Elphberg** has always lived in Ruritania and he cares about the people.
- 45- ☒ Not many people even knew what the **Duke of Strelsau** looked like.  
☒ Not many people even knew what **King Rudolf the Fifth** looked like.



## **Homework ((A))**

### **A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- How old was Rudolf Rassendyll?
- 2- What relation was Rose to Rassendyll?
- 3- What did Rassendyll take pride in?
- 4- Why was Rose so angry with Rassendyll ?
- 5- How far was Rassendyll completely passive ?
- 6- What qualifications has Rassendyll had?
- 7- When would Jacob Borrodaile become an ambassador?
- 8- Rudolf Rassendyll and Robert were two different characters. **Explain**
- 9- Rose was very persuasive . **Give examples**
- 10- How did Rassendyll know about the coronation in Ruritania?
- 11- Rudolf Rassendyll had to lie to Rose. Give reasons.
- 12- Why did Robert praise Rassendyll for writing a book?
- 13- Why did Rassendyll stop at Paris?
- 14- What do you know about George Featherly and Bertram Bertrand?
- 15- According to George Featherly, Why was Antoinette in Paris?
- 16- Why wouldn't the duke enjoy the coronation?
- 17- Why didn't Rassendyll tell Featherly that he was going to Ruritania?
- 18- Who took the same train with Rassendyll? What do you know about her?
- 19- How did the news he read in the paper affect his plans?
- 20- Why did the guards at the train stare at Rassendyll?
- 21- How far was Rassendyll similar to the descendants of Countess Amelia?
- 22- Why did Rassendyll want to visit Ruritania?
- 23- The Rassendylls had great interest in the royal family in Ruritania . **Discuss**.
- 24- What relation was the Duke to the king?
- 25- What was Rassendyll going to write a book about?

### **B) Read the following quotation and answer the questions:**

1- ***"She's angry because she thinks I don't do anything."***

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) What does the pronoun "**she**" refer to?
- c) Why was she angry?

2- ***"To a man like me , opportunities are responsibilities ."***

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) What was the listener's point of view?
- c) What good news did the listener have for the speaker?

3- ***"Where will he be working?"***

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) What does "**he**" refer to?
- c) What job was "**he**" going to do?

4- ***"He also realizes his position in society has responsibilities. "***

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) What does the underlined pronoun "**he**" refer to?

c) What else is different between them?

5- "I don't think he likes being only a Duke."

a) Who said these words? To whom?

b) What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to?

c) Why didn't this person like being only a Duke?

6- "You have an important person to travel with."

a) Who said these words? To whom?

b) Who is this important person?

c) Where did the addressee say he was travelling?

### **C) Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:**

1- Rose wanted Rassendyll to do something useless.

2- Rassendyll was leading a miserable life.

3- Rassendyll's brother was a prince.

4- Rassendyll had got black hair.

5- The Rassendylls were the royal family of Ruritania.

6- Rassendyll was having dinner when Rose came into the room.

7- Rassendyll studied at an English school and university.

8- Sir Jacob was going to be an adviser in six months.

9- Rose thought that writing a book is good way to get into politics.

10- George Featherly thought that Duke Michael is a humble man.

11- Antoinette was traveling with her officers.

12- Rassendyll told Featherly that he was traveling to Strelsau.

13- Bertram was a famous politician in Paris.

14- The guards at the Ruritanian borders were sad to see Rassendyll

## **Homework ((B))**

### **A) Answer the following questions:**

1- How was Rassendyll received at the inn in Zenda?

2- The Duke was popular with people. **Give reasons**

3- The king didn't have wide popularity among the Ruritanian. Say why

4- The old lady and her daughter had different opinions concerning the new king.  
**. Discuss**

5- How did the innkeeper's daughter know that the king had red hair?

6- Why was Johann surprised when he saw Rassendyll at the hotel?

7- Why did Rudolf Rassendyll feel sympathy towards Duke Michael?

8- How did Johann behave when he saw Rassendyll?

9- How was Johann generous to Rassendyll?

10- What made Rassendyll accept Johann's offer to stay at his sister's house?

11- Both the king and the Duke wanted the same thing. **Explain**

12- Where was the king staying before the coronation?

13- According to the old woman, why was the king at Zenda?

14- Where did Rassendyll send his luggage? What was his plan?

15- Why didn't the king tell Johann about his plan?

16- Rassendyll went to the forest of Zenda for two reasons. What are they?

17- The old castle was a completely fortified building. Explain

18- How could the old castle and the mansion be reached?

19- Where would Rassendyll stay when he reached Strelsau?

- 20- Why was Rassendyll surprised when he saw the king?
- 21- The Duke was absent from the king's company in the hunting lodge. Explain why
- 22- What are the similarities and differences between Rassendyll and the king?
- 23- What did Rassendyll tell Sapt and Fritz about himself?
- 24- What was the effect of surprise on both Rassendyll and the king?

**B) Read the following quotation and answer the questions:**

**1- " I wish he'd stay there in the forest ."**

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) Who is the speaker talking about?
- c) Why did the speaker wish he'd stay there in the forest ?

**2- " Let's say he prefers eating to Action ."**

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) Who is the speaker talking about?
- c) What does this show about this person's character ?

**3- " From there he will travel to the capital for his coronation. "**

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) What does " **there**" refer to?
- c) Where did that conversation happen?

**4- "No, I've never seen him, but I hope to do so on Wednesday "**

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) Who is the speaker talking about?
- c) Where would the speaker really meet this person?

**5- " This gentleman's come to our country to see the coronation. "**

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) Whom did the speaker refer to?
- c) What was the listener's impression at that time?

**6- " He's about the same height as the king, too. "**

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) What does the pronoun "**he**" refer to?
- c) What did the speaker ask the listener about?

**C) Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:**

- 1- The coronation was much later than Rassendyll thought.
- 2- Duke Michael was almost a stranger to the people of Ruritania.
- 3- Rudolf Elephberg was his father's favourite.
- 4- Johann invited Rassendyll to stay with his brother in Strelsau.
- 5- The castle of Zenda was surrounded by a river.
- 6- The journey from Paris to Zenda by train was interesting.
- 7- There was a famous old park in Zenda.
- 8- Duke Michael wanted to be the minister.
- 9- The old lady thought that the king should have the coronation.
- 10- Rassendyll once served the princess in the army.
- 11- The new castle could only be reached by a drawbridge.
- 12- The king was a cruel man, so Sapt and Fritz would do anything for him.

## Chapter 2

Silence	صمت	Hide	يختبئ
Bow	ينحني	Cellar	قبو (غرفة للتخزين أسفل مبنى)
Patiently	بصبر	Search	يفتش
stare at	يحدق النظر في	Guard	يحرس
Forgive	يصفح عن	Meanwhile	في أثناء ذلك
step up to	تقدم خطوات إلى	walk off	يمشي مبتعدا
Double	شبيه	Lock	يحبس
Palace	قصر	set off	يبدأ الرحلة
Can't help	لا يستطيع أن يتوقف عن	immediately	فورا
Wooden	خشبي	Interests	مبول / اهتمامات
Personal	شخصي	weaknesses	نقاط ضعف
a table had been laid out	أعدت المائدة	Behave	يتصرف
generous amounts	كميات وافرة	at my side	إلى جانبي
Delicious	لذيذ الطعم	station guard	المسئول عن القطار
a guard of soldiers	مجموعة من الحراس	Towers	أبراج
Guards	حراس	breathe deeply	يتنفس بعمق
Hungrily	بنهم	Cheer	يهتف
covered in water	مبلل تماما بالماء	Marshal	مشير (رتبة عسكرية)
wake him up	يوقظه	Nervous	قلق / خائف
breathe heavily	يتنفس بصعوبة	Support	يؤيد / يساند
Pulse	النبض	Tiny	صغير جدا
Poisoned	مسمم	freezing cold	برد قارص
make the most of it	يستغلها الاستغلال الأمثل	Square	ميدان
Crown	يتوج	colorful ribbons	أشرطة ملونة
take the crown	يستولي على العرش	colored flags	أعلام ملونة
Perfect	كامل / تام	call out	يصرخ / يستنجد
Forgive	يسامح	nevertheless	ومع ذلك
have no choice	ليس لديه اختيار	Actually	في الواقع
expression	تعبير	Delighted	سعيد / مسرور

1- It was a very strange feeling for me to be standing in a forest in the middle of Ruritania in front of a person who looked exactly the same as me. For a few minutes, the future King of Ruritania and I stood looking at each other in silence. Then I bowed to him and he finally spoke.

كان شعورا غريبا بالنسبة لي أن أكون واقفا في إحدى الغابات في دولة روريتانيا أمام شخص يشبهني تماما. وقفت أنا ومالك روريتانيا القادم لبضعة دقائق ننظر إلى بعضنا البعض في صمت، ثم انحنيتُ لتحيته، وتكلم هو أخيرا.

2- "**Colonel, Fritz: who is this gentleman?**" I was about to answer when Colonel Sapt stepped forward and spoke quietly to the King. As the Colonel talked, the King listened patiently, staring at me now and then. While they were talking, I examined him carefully. He certainly looked very like me, although there were some differences: his mouth was perhaps less wide and my face was a little thinner. But in most ways we were identical.

- قال الملك، "أيها العقيد، فريتز، من هذا السيد النبيل؟" كنتُ على وشك أن أجيب عندما تقدم العقيد سابت خطوة للأمام وتحدث مع الملك بهدوء. بينما العقيد كان يتحدث، كان ينصت له الملك بتفهم وكان يحدّق في بين الحين والآخر. بينما كانا يتحدثان، كنت أفحص الملك بدقة. بالتأكد كان يشبهني بدرجة كبيرة على الرغم من وجود بعض الاختلافات بيننا، ففمه كان أقل عرضاً، ووجهي كان أنحف قليلاً، ولكن بوجه عام كنا متماثلين.



- 3-Colonel Sapt stopped talking and the King suddenly began to laugh loudly. Then he stepped up to me, still laughing, and said, "**It's good to meet you, cousin! You must forgive me if I seemed surprised, as it's not every day that you see your double!**"

"**I hope you're not angry,**" I said.  
**"Whether I like it or not, you can't help looking like me. No, I'll happily help you. Where are you travelling to?"**  
**"To Strelsau, sir. To the coronation."**  
 The King looked at the two other men and smiled. "**What would my brother Michael think if he saw us two together!**" he cried.

- توقف العقيد سابت عن الحديث، وفجأة بدأ الملك يضحك بصوت عالٍ، ثم تقدم خطوات ناحيتي وهو مازال يضحك وقال، "أنا سعيد بمقابلتك يا ابن العم. أرجو أن تسامحني لأن الدهشة كانت تبدو عليّ، فأنت لا تقابل مثلي كل يوم." فقلت، "أرجو ألا يكون ذلك أغضبك." فقال، "سواء أحببت ذلك أم لا، فلا مفر من أن تكون شبيها لي. أنا لست غاضباً، ويسعدني أن أقدم لك مساعدة، إلى أين أنت مسافر؟" فقلت، "إلى ستريلسو، أنا ذاهب إلى حفل التتويج." نظر الملك إلى الرجلين الآخرين وابتسم ثم صاح قائلاً، "ما الذي سيخطر ببال أخي مايكل إذا رآنا نحن الاثنين معا."

4-"**But sir,**" said Fritz von Tarlenheim, "**I don't think it would be a good idea for Mr Rassendyll to visit Strelsau now.**"

"**Really? What do you think?**" the King asked Colonel Sapt.

"**I agree. He mustn't go,**" said the old soldier.

"**Don't worry, sir. I understand the problem,**" I said. "**I'll leave Ruritania today.**"

"**You don't need to go now!**" said the King. "**Please, first you must eat with me tonight. You don't meet a new cousin every day!**"

- قال فريتز فون تارلنهايم، "ولكن يا سيدي، أنا لا أعتقد أنها ستكون فكرة جيدة أن يذهب السيد راسيندل إلى ستريلسو الآن." فسأل الملك العقيد سابت، "حقاً؟ ما رأيك؟" فقال الضابط الكبير سنا، "أنا أتفق مع فريتز. لا يجب أبداً أن يذهب راسيندل إلى هناك." فقلت، "لا عليك يا سيدي، أنا متفهم المشكلة. سوف أغادر روريتانيا اليوم." فقال الملك، "لا ادعي أن تغادر اليوم. من فضلك، لا بد أولاً أن تتناول معي الطعام الليلة. أنت لا تقابل ابن عم جديد كل يوم."

5-"**Remember, sir, that we have an early start tomorrow,**" said Colonel Sapt.

"**We can still eat well,**" said the King, "**and good food is more important than sleep! Now Mr Rassendyll, what's your first name?**"

"**The same as yours,**" I answered, bowing again.

"**Come, then, cousin Rudolf. I don't have a house here, but I'm staying in the place my brother Michael uses for hunting. It's not the palace that I'm used to, but it will do for a few days.**"



So I walked with the King for half an hour through the forest, talking happily until we reached a small wooden hunting lodge between the trees. The King's personal servant came out to meet us. The other servant was the mother of Johann, the man who I had met earlier at the inn.

- قال العقيد سابت، "تذكر يا سيدي أن يومنا سيبدأ مبكرا غدا." فقال الملك، "ومع ذلك يمكننا أن نأكل جيدا، كما أن الطعام الجيد أهم من النوم. يا سيد راسيندل، ما اسمك الأول؟" فأجبت وأنا أنحني له مرة ثانية، "هو نفس اسمك." فقال، "تعالى إذن يا ابن العم رودولف. أنا لا أملك منزلا هنا، ولكنني أقيم في المكان الذي يستخدمه أخي مايكل أثناء الصيد. إنه ليس كالقصر الذي اعتدت عليه، ولكنه يفي بالغرض لبضعة أيام." وهكذا، قمت بالسير مع الملك لمدة نصف ساعة عبر الغابة نتحدث بلا تكلف حتى وصلنا إلى كوخ خشبي صغير يُستخدم عند الصيد ويقع بين الأشجار. خرج خادم الملك الشخصي لملاقاتنا. كانت الخادمة الأخرى هي والدة جوهان، الرجل الذي قابلته في الفندق الريفى.

6- "**Is dinner ready yet, Josef?**" the King asked the servant.

The servant said it was and showed us into a dining room where a table had been laid out with generous amounts of food. After my walk I was hungry, so I ate a lot and the food was delicious, but I noticed that Colonel Sapt and Fritz von Tarlenheim did not want to eat too much because of the events the next day.

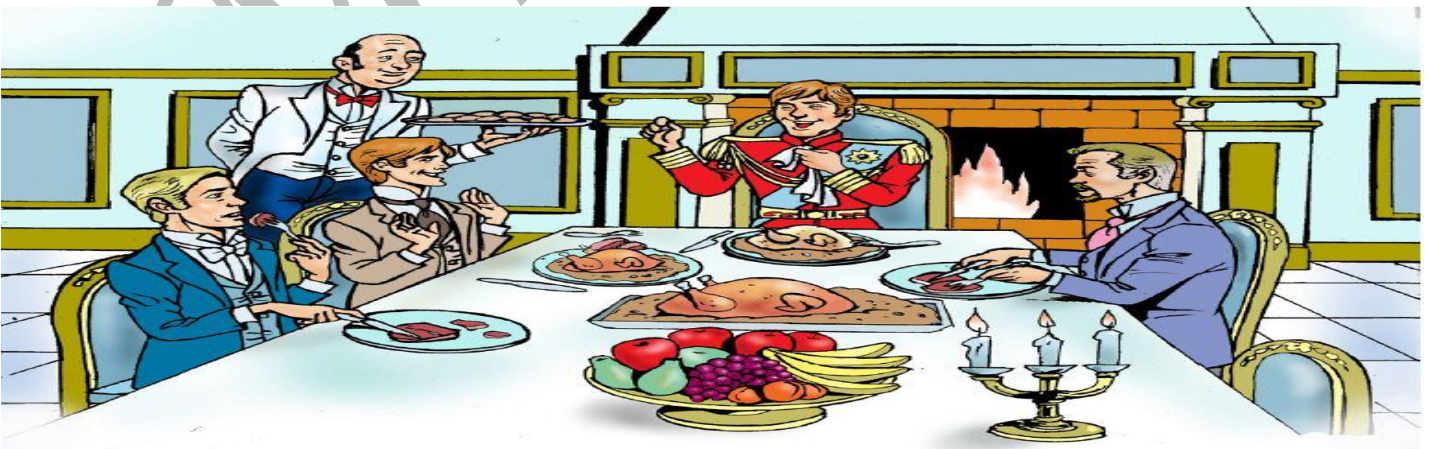
"**The Colonel and I have to leave here at six tomorrow morning,**" Fritz explained. "**We ride to Zenda and return with a guard of soldiers to take the King to the station.**"

"**It's very good of my brother to let me use his guards,**" said the King.

"**But Rudolf, forget these two men! We don't need to get up so early, so eat some more, cousin!**"

- سأل الملك الخادم، "هل العشاء جاهز يا جوزيف؟" ردّ الخادم بالإيجاب، ورافقنا إلى غرفة الطعام حيث كانت هناك منضدة معدة وعليها كمية وفيرة من الطعام. كنتُ جائعا بعد المسافة التي قطعناها سيرا على الأقدام، لذلك أكلت كثيرا من الطعام الذي كان شهيا. ولكنني لاحظتُ أن العقيد سابت وفريترز فون تارلنهام لم يرغبوا في تناول الكثير بسبب الفعاليات التي ستحدث في اليوم التالي. شرح لي فريترز قائلا، "سوف نغادر أنا والعقيد سابت هنا في السادسة من صباح الغد. سنمنطقي خيولنا إلى زندا ثم نعود ومعا أحد الجنود الحراس لنصطحب الملك إلى محطة القطار." قال الملك، "إنه شئ طيب جدا من أخي أن يسمح لي باستخدام حراسه. ولكن يا رودولف، لا تشغل بالك بهذين الرجلين! فنحن لسنا بحاجة إلى الاستيقاظ مبكرا على هذا النحو. إذا، تناول المزيد من الطعام يا ابن العم!"

7- We continued to eat and Josef continued to bring in more food. "**The Duke said I was to give you this at the end of your meal,**" said the



servant, putting some cakes in front of us.

"**Well done, Michael! He knows me well!**" said the King happily, and he ate the cakes hungrily, as if they were the first thing he had eaten all day. I ate one of the cakes, but I had really eaten enough, and when the King

seemed to have finally finished eating, I asked to go to bed. That is all I remember of that evening.

- واصلنا تناول الطعام وواصل جوزيف إحضار المزيد منه. قال الخادم وهو يضع أمانا بعض الكعك، "قال لي الدوق أنه يجب علي أن أقدم لك هذا في نهاية وجبتك." فقال الملك سعيدا، "أحسننت صنعا يا مايكل. إنه يعرفني جيدا." ثم أكل الكعك بنهم كما لو كان هو أول شيء يأكله طوال اليوم. أنا أكلت كعكة واحدة فقط حيث كنت قد أكلت ما يكفي بالفعل. وعندما بدا أن الملك قد فرغ أخيرا من الطعام، طلبت أن أذهب للنوم. هذا كل ما أتذكره في ذلك المساء.

8-The next thing I remember, I woke up suddenly covered in water. I looked up and saw Colonel Sapt standing in front of me, with Fritz von Tarlenheim next to him. "**That wasn't funny,**" I said, when I realised the Colonel had thrown water over me.

"**Nothing else would wake you up. It's five o'clock,**" said Sapt. "**Five o'clock? But it's early and ...**"

"**Rassendyll,**" said Fritz in a worried voice, "**you must come and look at this.**" He took my arm and led me to the next room. The King was lying on the floor. His face was red and he was breathing heavily.

- الشيء التالي الذي أتذكره هو أنني استيقظت فجأة وقد غطي الماء وجهي. رفعت رأسي لأعلى فرائث العقيد سابت يقف أمامي وبجواره فريتز فون تارلنهام، فقلت عندما أدركت أن العقيد قد نثر الماء فوقي، "لم يكن هذا شيئا مضحكا." فقال سابت، "لم تكن هناك أي وسيلة أخرى لتوقظك من النوم. الساعة الآن الخامسة." فقلت، "الخامسة؟ ولكن الوقت مبكر و...." فقال فريتز بصوت يبدو عليه القلق، "راسيندل، يجب أن تأتي وتتنظر إلى هذا." وأخذني من ذراعي وقادني حتى الغرفة التالية. كان الملك ملقى على الأرض ولون وجهه أحمر ويتنفس بصعوبة.

9-"**We've been trying to wake him up for half an hour, but we can't,**" explained Fritz. I bent down and felt his pulse, which was very weak and slow. "**It must've been those cakes that he ate last night! Do you think**



**he was poisoned?"** I asked.

"**We don't know,**" said Sapt.

"**We must get a doctor.**"

"**There's no doctor for fifteen kilometres and even a thousand doctors won't make him better today,**" said Fritz.

"**But what about the coronation?"** I cried.

"**We must tell the people of**

**Ruritania that he's ill,**" said Fritz.

"**If he's not crowned today, I don't think he'll ever be King,**" said Sapt.

"**But why?"** I asked.

"**The whole country's waiting for him today. Most of the army is waiting too, with Duke Michael leading it. They won't be happy,**" said Sapt.

- شرح فريتز لي قائلا، "نحن نحاول إفاقة منذ نصف ساعة ولكننا لم نستطع." انحنيت إلى أسفل وقمتُ بجس نبضه فوجدته ضعيفا وبطيئا للغاية. قلتُ لهما، "إنه بالتأكيد ذلك الكعك الذي أكله الليلة الماضية. هل تعتقدان أنه تعرض للتسمم؟" فقال سابت، "لا نعلم. يجب أن نحضر طبيبا." فقال فريتز، "لا يوجد طبيب لمسافة خمسة عشر كيلومترا، وحتى لو هناك ألف طبيب فلن يستطيعوا شفاؤه اليوم." فصرختُ قائلا، "ولكن ماذا عن حفل التتويج؟" فقال فريتز، "علينا أن نخبر شعب روريتانيا بأنه مريض." قال سابت، "لو لم يتم تتويجه اليوم، فلا أعتقد أنه سيكون ملكا بعد ذلك على الإطلاق." فسألته، "ولكن لماذا؟" فقال سابت، "الدولة كلها تنتظره اليوم. ومعظم الجيش، الذي يقوده الدوق مايكل، يتربأ أيضا، إنهم لن يكونوا سعداء بذلك."



10- "**We must tell everyone what's happened and make the most of it,**" said Fritz, getting up to leave. Sapt stopped him.

"**Do you think that he was poisoned?**" he asked me.

"**Yes, I do,**" I answered.

"**Then who did it?**"

"**It must have been Duke Michael!**" Fritz said angrily.

"**Yes, he did this so that his brother cannot be crowned,**" continued Sapt. "**You don't know what the Duke is like, do you, Rassendyll? If Rudolf doesn't become King, Duke Michael will take the crown.**"

We all sat in silence while we thought about what we could do. Then Sapt suddenly stood up. "**I have an idea! It was lucky that we met you yesterday,**" he said excitedly, looking at me, "**because you can go to Strelsau to be crowned!**"

• قال فريتز وهو ينهض استعدادا للمغادرة، "يجب أن نخبر الجميع بما حدث ونستغل ذلك لصالحنا." فأوقفه سابت الذي سألتني، "هل تعتقد أنه تم دس السم له؟" فأجبتته بأنني أعتقد ذلك، فتساءل، "إذا من الذي فعل ذلك؟" فأجاب فريتز غاضبا، "إنه بالتأكيد الدوق مايكل." فاستطرد سابت قائلا، "نعم، إنه فعل ذلك حتى لا يمكن تتويج أخيه. أنت لا تعرف شخصية الدوق يا راسيندل، أليس كذلك؟ لو لم يصبح رودولف ملكا، فسوف يستولي الدوق مايكل على التاج." جلسنا جميعا صامتين نفكر فيما يمكننا عمله. ثم نهض سابت فجأة وقال بحماس وهو ينظر لي، "عندي فكرة. لقد كان من حسن الحظ أن نقابلك بالأمس، لأنك تستطيع أن تذهب إلى ستريلسو لكي يتم تتويجك!"

11- "**Me? That's impossible!**" I laughed. "**People would realise that I'm not the King! And don't forget that I'm English!**"

"**It would be easy to forget that,**" said Fritz, "**because your German's perfect. And if we dress you in different clothes, no one will know.**"

"**If you don't go to Strelsau, Duke Michael will be King tonight, and the King will either be dead or in prison,**" said Sapt.

"**I understand what you're saying, but the King would never forgive me if I...**" "**Our country needs this!**" cried Sapt.

Standing up, I walked round the room in silence. The clock **ticked** sixty times, then seventy, eighty. I looked at the poor King lying on the floor and realised I had no choice. Sapt clearly read my expression, because he smiled even before I said quietly, "**Very well, I'll go.**"

• قلتُ ضاحكا، "أنا؟ هذا مستحيل. سيلاحظ الناس أنني لستُ الملك، ولا تنسى أنني إنجليزي." فقال فريتز، "من السهل أن نغض الطرف عن ذلك لأن لغتك الألمانية ممتازة، وإذا قمنا باللباسك ملابس مختلفة، لن يعرف أحد." قال سابت، "لو لم تذهب إلى ستريلسو، سيصبح الدوق مايكل ملكا الليلة، والملك إما أن يموت أو يتم الزواج به في السجن." فقلت، "أنا متفهم ما تقولان، ولكن لن يغفر لي الملك مطلقا إذا...". فصرخ سابت مقاطعا، "إن بلدنا تحتاج ذلك." فوقفتُ، ومشيتُ في أنحاء الحجرة في صمت. أصدرت ساعة الحائط تكاتها ستين مرة، ثم وصل العدد إلى سبعين، فثمانين. نظرتُ إلى الملك المسكين الملقى على الأرض وأدركتُ أنه ليس أمامي بديل آخر. قرأ سابت تعبير وجهي بوضوح لأنه ابتسم حتى قبل أن أقول بهدوء، "حسنا جدا، سأذهب."

12- "**We won't wait for Michael's guards but leave for Strelsau at once,**" said Sapt. "**We can hide the King in the cellar so when the guards arrive they'll think no one's here,**" said Sapt.

"**What if they search the building?**" asked Fritz.

"**Josef will say the hunting lodge is empty,**" said Sapt. "**This is our only chance.**"

"**How will we get the King to Strelsau?**" I asked.

**"Tonight we sleep in the palace,"** said Sapt. **"As soon as we are alone in the King's bedroom, you and I will leave and come back here on our horses. Fritz can stay and guard the King's bedroom in the palace, and I will tell Josef to get the King ready for the journey back. The King will then return to the palace with me in the dark. Meanwhile, you will ride as fast as you can to the border and try to leave the country before it's light. Do we all agree on this plan?"**

**"I agree,"** I said.

**"It's a good plan,"** said Fritz.

- قال سابت، "لن ننتظر حراس مايكل، بل سنغادر إلى ستريلسو في الحال. يمكن أن نخبئ الملك في القبو، بحيث عندما يصل الحراس يعتقدون أنه لا يوجد أحد هنا." فسأله فريتز، "ماذا لو قاموا بتفتيش المبنى؟" فقال سابت، "سوف يقول لهم جوزيف أنه لا يوجد أحد في كوخ الصيد. هذه هي فرصتنا الوحيدة." فسألت، "كيف سنأخذ الملك إلى ستريلسو؟" فقال سابت، "الليلة، نبيت في القصر وبمجرد أن نصبح بمفردين في حجرة نوم الملك، أنا وأنت نغادر عاندين إلى هنا على ظهر الخيل. فريتز سيبقى في القصر ليحرس حجرة نوم الملك، وأنا سأبلغ جوزيف أن يجهز الملك لرحلة العودة. بعد ذلك سيعود الملك معي في الظلام إلى القصر. وفي هذه الأثناء، تمتطي أنت الجواد بأسرع ما يمكنك لتصل إلى الحدود وتحاول أن تغادر البلد قبل طلوع النهار. هل نحن جميعا موافقون على هذه الخطة؟" فقلت له أنني موافق، وقال فريتز، "إنها خطة جيدة."

13-Sapt and Fritz picked up the King and began to carry him out of the room, but we realised we were being watched by Johann's mother, who looked at us with a strange expression before walking off. **"I think she heard us,"** said Sapt. **"After we've moved the King, I'll speak to her."** Meanwhile, Josef began to dress me in some of the King's clothes. When Fritz returned, he looked at me and said, **"You know, I think we can do this."** **"What happened to Johann's mother?"** I asked.

**"She's locked in the cellar with the King,"** said Fritz. **"Josef will let her out later, after Michael's gone. But I'm sure, when they find that the King is not here, Michael will realise we know about his plan."**

**"Let's go,"** said Sapt, returning into the room.

**"Is all safe here?"** asked Fritz.

**"No, nothing's safe anywhere, but we must do our best,"** answered Sapt.

- سابت وفريتز قاما برفع الملك وحمله إلى خارج الحجرة، ولكننا أدركنا أن والدته جوهان كانت تراقبنا ونظرت لنا وعلى وجهها تعبير غريب قبل أن تتصرف. قال سابت، "أعتقد أنها سمعتنا. بعد أن نقوم بنقل الملك، سوف أتحدث معها." في هذه الأثناء، بدأ جوزيف يساعدني في ارتداء بعض ملابس الملك. عندما عاد فريتز، نظر إلي وقال، "أعتقد أننا سننجح." فسألته، "ماذا حدث لوالدة جوهان؟" فقال، "تم احتجازها في القبو مع الملك." سوف يطلق جوزيف سراحها فيما بعد، بعد مغادرة مايكل. ولكني متأكد أنهم عندما يجدوا أن الملك غير موجود هنا، سيُدرك مايكل أننا نعرف خطته." قال سابت عندما عاد إلى الحجرة، "هيا بنا نغادر." فسأله فريتز، "هل كل شيء آمن هنا؟" فأجاب سابت، "لا، لا شيء آمن في أي مكان، ولكن يجب علينا بذل قصارى جهدنا."

14-We were now all in uniforms and set off on horses. It was a cool morning and Sapt immediately began to tell me the history of the King's life: of his family, likes, interests, weaknesses, friends and servants. He told me how I should behave in the palace and said he would always be at my side to tell me who the people were that I met. Soon we reached the station. Fritz told the surprised-looking station guard that the King had changed his plans, and we got on the train to the capital. I looked at my watch – or I should say, the King's watch – and asked Fritz if he thought Duke Michael had found the King. **"I hope not,"** said Fritz. After a short

time we passed the towers and buildings of the capital and I could see we were near the station.

• كنا جميعا الآن نرتدي الزي الرسمي، وبدأنا الرحلة على ظهر الخيل. كان صباحا باردا، وبدأ سابت على الفور يحكي لي قصة حياة الملك. حكي لي عن عائلته والأشياء التي يحبها واهتماماته ونقاط ضعفه وأصدقائه وخدمه. وأخبرني كيف يجب أن أتصرف في القصر، وقال أنه سيكون دائما إلى جوار لي لحدثني عن الأشخاص الذين سوف أقابلهم. سريعا، وصلنا إلى المحطة. قال فريتز لحارس المحطة الذي بدا مندهشا أن الملك قد غير خطته، وصعدنا إلى القطار متجهين إلى العاصمة. نظرتُ في ساعتني، أو يجب أن أقول في ساعة الملك، وسألت فريتز إذا كان يعتقد أن الدوق مايكل قد وجد الملك، فقال، "أتمنى ألا يكون قد حدث ذلك." بعد وقت قصير مررنا بأبراج ومباني العاصمة ورأيتُ أننا كنا نقترُب من المحطة.

15- "**How are you feeling?**" asked Sapt. "**Nervous**," I replied. "**I'm not made of stone, you know.**"

"**You'll be fine. But we are an hour earlier than they expect, so there'll be no one to meet us. We must send word to the palace. So meanwhile ...**"

"**Meanwhile, I'll have some breakfast!**" I cried. "**The King is hungry!**" Sapt smiled at me, then took my hand. "**Let's hope we're all alive tonight.**"

The train stopped and I breathed deeply as we stepped out onto the station at Strelsau. A moment later and everything was suddenly busy: men ran up to us, then ran away again, soldiers rode off on horses, other men showed me to the station restaurant. As I ate my breakfast, I could hear music and people cheering "**God save the King!**" in preparation for the coronation.

"**God save both Kings,**" said Sapt.

• سألني سابت، "ما هو شعورك الآن؟" فقلت، "متوتر. فأنا بشر من لحم ودم." فقال، "ستكون على ما يرام. ولكننا وصلنا ساعة مبكرا عما كانوا يتوقعونه، لذلك فلن يكون هناك أحد في استقبالنا. يجب أن نرسل تنبيها بوصولنا إلى القصر، وفي هذه الأثناء ..." فصرختُ فيه مقاطعا، "في هذه الأثناء، سأتناول الإفطار. الملك جوعان." ابتسم لي سابت، وأمسك يدي قائلا، "دعنا نأمل أن نكون جميعا على قيد الحياة اليوم." توقف القطار وأخذتُ نفسا عميقا بينما كنا نخطو للخارج إلى المحطة في ستريلسو. بعد ذلك بدقيقة واحدة أصبح كل شيء مليئ بالحركة، جرى رجال نحونا ثم جروا مبتعدين مرة أخرى، امتطى جنودا خيولهم وابتعدوا، ورافقتي رجال آخرون إلى مطعم المحطة. وأثناء تناول إفطاري، سمعتُ أصوات موسيقى وأشخاص يهتفون قائلين، "حفظ الله الملك"، كانوا يستعدون لحفل التتويج. قال سابت، "حفظ الله كلا الملكين."

16-When we left the restaurant, we saw that a group of soldiers had arrived to welcome us. It was led by a tall old man whose jacket was covered in medals. "**That is Marshal Strakencz,**" said Sapt, so that I knew who he was: a very important person in the army. The Marshal greeted me and said he was sorry that the Duke could not meet me at the station but that he would see me shortly. I answered as politely and formally as I could, and began to feel less nervous when no one seemed to realise that I was not the real King. But I saw that Fritz was still very nervous when he shook the Marshal's hand.

• عند مغادرة المطعم، رأينا مجموعة من الجنود الذين وصلوا للترحيب بنا. كان قائد المجموعة رجل طويل وكبير سنا، وكانت سترته تمتلئ بالأنواط. قال سابت لكي أعرف من هو، "هذا هو المارشال ستراكنتش." إنه شخص مهم جدا في الجيش. قام المارشال بتحييتي واعتذر لي لأن الدوق لم يتمكن من استقبالي في المحطة، وقال أنه سيقابلني قريبا. كنت أرد بطريقة مهذبة ورسمية قدر استطاعتي، وبدأت أشعر بأنني أقل توترا عندما لم يبدو أن أي شخص قد أدرك أنني لست الملك. ولكنني رأيتُ أن فريتز كان مازال متوترا للغاية عندما قام بمصافحة المارشال.

17-The soldiers led us out of the station, where we got onto horses that were waiting outside. I began to ride through the capital with the Marshal on my right and Sapt on my left. As we were riding, I saw that the city was

partly old and partly new. There were wide, modern streets where the rich people lived in big houses. These were the people who had always lived well under the King's father, and who would support the new King because they knew that nothing would change.

- سار الجنود أمامنا حتى خرجنا من المحطة، ثم امتطينا الخيول التي كانت تنتظر بالخارج. بدأت أتجول عبر العاصمة راكبا، وكان المارشال علي يميني وسابت على يساري. بينما كنا نتجول بالخيول رأيت أن جزءا من المدينة كان قديما والجزء الآخر كان جديدا. كانت هناك شوارع واسعة حديثة حيث يعيش الأثرياء في منازل كبيرة. هؤلاء هم الناس الذين كانوا يعيشون دائما حياة جيدة في عهد والد الملك، وهم الذين كانوا يساندون الملك الجديد لأنهم يعرفون أنه لن يحدث تغيير في أي شيء.

18-But behind the modern streets was a very different area that made up the old town. Here thousands of people were crowded into tiny houses which were old and hot in the summer, freezing cold in the winter. These narrow streets were where the city's many poor people lived, and these people did not want things to stay the same. For that reason, they did not like the King and supported Duke Michael, who told them he wanted things to be different and gave them hope for a better future. I knew that this area would not be very safe for me, the King.

- ولكن خلف الشوارع الحديثة كانت هناك منطقة مختلفة تماما والتي كانت تمثل المدينة القديمة. هنا كان يكتظ الآلاف من الناس في منازل صغيرة جدا والتي كانت قديمة وفيها الحرارة مرتفعة في الصيف والبرودة قارصة في الشتاء. كان يسكن في هذه الشوارع الضيقة الكثير من الفقراء، وهؤلاء الناس لم يكونوا يريدون أن تظل الأوضاع على حالها. ولهذا السبب، هم لم يحبوا الملك وكانوا يؤيدون الدوق مايكل الذي أخبرهم أنه يريد أن يجعل الأمور مختلفة وأعطاهم أملا في حياة أفضل. كنت أعرف أن هذه المنطقة لم تكن آمنة بالنسبة لي، بصفتي الملك.

19-We continued towards a great square where the palace stood. There were coloured flags and colourful ribbons everywhere and people lined the streets, clapping and cheering. I waved to them as we passed and people threw flowers down from the balconies above me. One flower fell on my horse, so I picked it up and stuck it onto my coat. Seeing me do this, the Marshal looked at me, but I could not tell from his expression whether he was happy or angry.

- واصلنا السير باتجاه ميدان كبير حيث كان يوجد القصر. كانت هناك رايات وشرائط ملونة في كل مكان، وكان الناس يصطفون في الشوارع يصفقون ويهتفون. لوحث لهم بيدي أثناء مرورنا، وكان الناس يلقون بالورود فوق من الشرفات. سقطت إحدى الورود على خصائي، فالتقطتها وقمت بتثبيتها في معطفي. نظر المارشال إلي عندما رأيته أفعل ذلك، ولكنني لم أستطع أن أحدد من خلال تعبير وجهه إذا كان سعيدا أم غاضبا.

20-Nevertheless, I smiled happily at the Marshal. I have written "happily" but that is really how I felt. The truth is, at that moment, I really believed that I was actually the King. I looked up and laughed, delighted to see so much colour and so many happy faces. Then I looked again in surprise: there, on a balcony above me, was the proud smile of the traveller on the train, Antoinette de Mauban. As she stared at me, her expression changed. Surely she knew who I was. Surely she would call out, "***That is not the real King!***"

- ورغم ذلك، ابتسمت للمارشال بسعادة. كتبت كلمة "بسعادة" لكن كان هذا هو الإحساس الذي انتابني حقا. فالحقيقة هي أنني في تلك اللحظة صدقت أنني الملك بالفعل. رفعت بصري لأعلى وضحكت، كنت مسرورا لرؤية هذا الكم الهائل من الألوان وهذا العدد الكبير من الوجوه السعيدة. ثم نظرت مرة أخرى مندهشا، فهناك في إحدى الشرفات العالية، رأيته الابتسامة الواثقة للمسافرة التي كانت في القطار، أنطوانيت دو موبان. عندما حدثت في، تغير تعبير وجهها. بالتأكيد عرفت حقيقتي، بالتأكيد كانت ستصرخ قائلة، "هذا ليس هو الملك الحقيقي".

## Questions & Answers

**1- What slight differences فروق طفيفة did Rudolf Rassendyll notice between him and the king of Ruritania?**

✎ He noticed that the king's mouth was less wide and Rudolf's face was a little thinner.

**2- Why did the king of Ruritania seem surprised when he saw Rudolf Rassendyll?**

✎ Because Rudolf Rassendyll looked exactly the same as him.

**3- Why do you think Fritz says that it is not a good time for Rassendyll to visit Strelsau?**

✎ Because he looked exactly like the king and that may cause problems for Rudolf and for the King.

**4- What did the king invite Rudolf to do?**

✎ - He invited him to have dinner with him in the hunting lodge.

**5- Where was the king staying in the forest?**

✎ He was staying in the hunting lodge.

**6- Who was Josef?**

✎ - He was a servant to the king of Ruritania.

**7- What did Colonel Sapt advise the King to do concerning خصوص dinner in the hunting lodge? Why?**

✎ He advised him not to eat too much because they had to leave early the next day.

**8- Why did Rassendyll eat a lot when the King invited him to dinner?**

✎ Because he was hungry after his long walk, and the food was delicious

**9- What did the King's servant bring him at the end of his meal?**

✎ He brought the king some cakes.

**10- Why didn't Fritz and Sapt eat very much? What advice did they give the King?**

✎ They didn't want to overeat يتناول الطعام أكثر because they had to get up early the next day. They advised the King not to eat too much.

**11- How did Colonel Sapt wake Rudolf Rassendyll up?**

✎ He threw water over him.

**12- Why couldn't Colonel Sapt and Fritz wake up the king the next morning in the hunting lodge?**

✎ It seemed كان يبدو that the king had been poisoned تم تسميمه by the cakes he ate the night before.

**13- The cakes that the king ate in the hunting lodge had a very bad effect on him. Explain.**

✎ His face was red and he was breathing heavily. يتنفس بصعوبة His pulse was weak and slow. النبض ضعيف وبطيء

**14- Why was it difficult to bring a doctor to help the king?**

✎ Because there was no doctor for 15 kilometers and even a thousand doctors wouldn't make him better that day as he was too ill.

**15- Why did the Duke poison التسمم the King?**

✎ He hoped that the King would miss the coronation and that he (the Duke) would become the King instead.

**16- Why wasn't Rassendyll as sick as the King?**

✎ Because he ate only one cake, ,but The King ate more, so he received more poison.

**17- According to Colonel Sapt, what would happen if Rudolf Elphberg wasn't crowned on the specified day اليوم المحدد?**

✎ He wouldn't ever be the king.

**18- What would happen if Duke Michael managed to take the crown?**

✎ Rudolf Elphberg (the king) would either be dead or in prison.

**19- What did Colonel Sapt suggest to prevent Duke Michael from taking the crown?**

✎ He said that Rudolf Rassendyll could go to Strelsau to be crowned يتوج as he was exactly like the king.

**20- Why was Rudolf Rassendyll the ideal المثالي person to replace يحل محل the king?**

✎ He looked exactly like the king. His German was perfect.

**21- At first, Rudolf Rassendyll objected to اعترض replacing the king for two reasons. What were they?**

✎ People would realise يدرك that he wasn't the king. He was English. He wasn't a Ruritanian.

**22- Why did Fritz and Colonel Sapt hide the king in the cellar of the hunting lodge?** القبو

☞ The king was unconscious فاقد الوعي and they didn't want Duke Michael's guards to find him.

**23- What was Colonel Sapt's plan to get the ill king back to the palace?**

☞ Sapt, Fritz and Rudolf Rassendyll would go to the palace. Sapt and Rudolf would go back to the hunting lodge to bring the king while Fritz would stay in the palace to guard يحرس the king's bedroom. Then Rudolf would leave the country.

**24- What was Johann's mother job?**

☞ She was a servant of the Duke.

**25- Why was Johann's mother locked in the cellar with the king?** حبست

☞ She was locked in the cellar because she overheard Colonel Sapt's plan to rescue ينقذ the king.

**26- Why do Sapt, Fritz and Rudolf Rassendyll go to the station early instead of waiting for Duke Michael's guards?**

☞ They wanted to get out of the lodge and be on their way to the capital before the Duke's men came.

**27- What things did Sapt tell Rudolf Rassendyll about the King on their way to the palace?**

☞ He told him about the history of the King's life, of his family, likes, interests اهتمامات, weaknesses نقاط الضعف, friends and servants.

**28- What did Fritz tell the station guard to justify their early coming to the station?** حارس يُبرر

☞ He told him that the King had changed his plans.

**29- What is the first thing Fritz, Sapt and Rudolf Rassendyll do when they reach the capital?**

☞ The first thing they do is eat breakfast at the train station.

**30- Why weren't the people from the palace at the station in Strelsau to meet Rudolf Rassendyll, Fritz and Sapt?**

☞ because the King (Rassendyll) arrived earlier than planned.

**31- Who was Marshal Strakencz?**

☞ He was an important person in the Ruritanian army.



**32- Why did Fritz feel very nervous عصبى when he shook Marshal Strakencz's hand?**

✎ He was afraid that the Marshal might discover that Rudolf Rassendyll wasn't the real King.

**33- What kind of life did rich people live in the capital of Strelsau?**

✎ They lived a comfortable life in big houses built in wide, modern streets.

**34- What kind of life did poor people live in Strelsau?**

✎ They lived a hard life. People were crowded مزدحمة into tiny صغيرة houses which were old and hot in summer, freezing cold شديدة البرودة in winter. The streets were narrow.

**35- Why did the rich of Strelsau support the King ? يؤيد**

✎ They supported the King as they had always lived well under the King's father and they knew that nothing would change.

**36- Why did the poor people of Strelsau support Duke Michael?**

- ✎ -Because they didn't want things to stay the same.
- Duke Michael told them he wanted things to be different
- He gave them hope for a better future.
- He cared for them.

**37- Why was Rassendyll afraid when he saw Antoinette de Mauban staring at him in Strelsau?**

✎ Her expression تعبير changed, so he thought she recognised تعرف that he is not the real King. He was afraid that she would shout out and tell others.

## Quotations

**1- 'What would my brother Michael think if he saw us two together!'**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- The king said this to Colonel Sapt and Fritz von Tarlenheim.

**2- Who were the two people referred to here?**

- They were the king of Ruritania and Rudolf Rassendyll.

**3- Why did the speaker say this?**

- Because he and Rudolf looked exactly alike, so Duke Michael wouldn't believe it.

**2- 'But sir, I don't think it would be a good idea for Mr Rassendyll to visit Strelsau now.'**

**1- Who said these words to whom?**

- Fritz said these words to the King.

**2- Why did the speaker think it wasn't a good idea for Rassendyll to do so?**

- Because it wouldn't be nice for the people to see a double of their King.

**3- Why did the speaker have to change his opinion hours later?**

- Because the King was poisoned and if he wasn't crowned that day, Michael would take the crown. So Rassendyll was asked to take the King's place.

**3- 'You don't need to go now! Please, first you must eat with me tonight. You don't meet a new cousin every day!'**

**1- Who said these words to whom?**

- The king said these words to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- Where was the addressed person going?**

- He was going to Ruritania to attend the coronation.

**3- Where did they have dinner?**

- They had dinner at the hunting lodge.

**4- 'Remember, sir, that we have an early start tomorrow.'**

**1- Who said these words to whom?**

- Colonel Sapt said these words to the King.

**2- What did the addressed person want to do that made the speaker say so?**

- He wanted to have dinner and invited Rassendyll to eat with him.

**3- What was addressed person's reply?**

- He said they could eat well, and good food is more important than sleep.

**5- 'It's not the palace that I'm used to, but it will do for a few days.'**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- The King said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- Which place was the speaker talking about?**

- He was talking about the hunting lodge of Duke Michael.

**3- Why was the speaker staying at that place?**

- Duke Michael invited him to stay there for a few days before the coronation.

**6- 'The Colonel and I have to leave here at six tomorrow morning.'**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Fritz said this to Rassendyll.

**2- Where were they?**

- They were at the hunting lodge.

**3- Where will they leave for? Why?**

- They will leave for Zenda to bring a guard of soldiers to take the King to the station.

**7- 'The Duke said I was to give you this at the end of your meal'**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Josef, the King's servant, said this to the King.

**2- What was the speaker talking about?**

- He was talking about some cakes.

### **3- What happened at the end of the meal?**

- The King was poisoned and fell unconscious.

### **8- "Do you think he was poisoned?"**

#### **1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rassendyll said this to Colonel Sapt.

#### **2- Who was the speaker talking about?**

- He was talking about the king.

#### **3- Why was that person poisoned?**

- He was poisoned so that he couldn't be crowned.

### **9- "We must tell the people of Ruritania that he's ill."**

#### **1- Who said this to whom?**

- Fritz said this to Sapt and Rassendyll.

#### **2- Who was ill? Why?**

- The King was ill as he was poisoned by the cakes that Duke Michael had sent him.

#### **3- Who objected to the speaker's idea? Why?**

- Sapt objected as if the King was not crowned that day, he would never be King.

### **10- "If he's not crowned today, I don't think he'll ever be King."**

#### **1- Who said this to whom?**

- Colonel Sapt said this to Fritz and Rassendyll.

#### **2- What made the speaker think so?**

- The whole country was waiting for the King that day. Most of the army was waiting too, with Duke Michael leading it. They wouldn't be happy.

#### **3- How was the king prevented from being crowned that day?**

- He was poisoned by the cakes that Duke Michael had sent him.

### **11- "We must tell everyone what's happened and make the most of it."**

#### **1- Who said this to whom?**

- Fritz said this to Rudolf Rassendyll and Colonel Sapt.

#### **2- Where was this said and when?**

- This was said in the hunting lodge when they found the King unconscious in the morning.

#### **3- What must they tell everyone?**

- They must tell everyone that the King was ill and wouldn't be able to go to the coronation.

### **12- "It must have been Duke Michael!"**

#### **1- Who said this to whom?**

- Fritz said this to Colonel Sapt and Rassendyll.

#### **2- What did Duke Michael do?**

- He poisoned the King.

#### **3- Why did Duke Michael do such a thing?**

- To stop the King's coronation.

**13- 'You don't know what the Duke is like, do you?'**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Colonel Sapt said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- According to the speaker, what was the Duke like?**

- He was an evil man who wanted to be the King instead of his brother.

**3- What did the Duke do to prevent his brother from taking the crown?**

- He ordered the servant to give his brother poisonous cakes.

**14- 'Do we all agree on this plan?'**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Colonel Sapt said this to Fritz and Rassendyll.

**2- What was the plan?**

- After the coronation, Sapt and Rassendyll would go back to the hunting lodge. Fritz would guard the King's bedroom. The King and Sapt would return to the palace and Rassendyll would leave the country.

**3- What was the listeners' opinion of that plan?**

- They agreed on it saying that it was a good plan.

**"No, nothing's safe anywhere, but we must do our best."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Colonel Sapt said this to Fritz.

**2- Which place were they talking about?**

- They were talking about the hunting lodge in the forest near Zenda.

**3- Why was it important for that place to be safe?**

- It was important for that place to be safe because the King was left unconscious there and they didn't want Duke Michael and his men to know about that.

**16- 'Nervous. I'm not made of stone, you know.'**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rassendyll said this to Colonel Sapt.

**2- Why was the speaker nervous?**

- Because he pretended to be the King of Ruritania. He was afraid that he might be discovered.

**3- When did the speaker begin to feel less nervous?**

- He began to feel so when no one seemed to realise that he was not the real king.

**17- 'God save both Kings.'**

**1- Who said this and where was he?**

- Sapt said this in the restaurant at the train station in Strelsau.

**2- What did the people say just before this?**

- The people said, "God save the king!"

**3- Why does the speaker say "both Kings"? Who is he talking about?**

- He's talking about the real King who is in the lodge at Zenda and about Rassendyll who is pretending to be the King for the coronation. He is worried about the safety of both men, the real King and the pretend King.

**Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it**

- 1- ☒ Rassendyll's face is a little different from the **duke's** face.  
☒ Rassendyll's face is a little different from the **king's** face.
- 2- ☒ The king's mouth was less wide and Rudolf's face was a little **fatter**.  
☒ The king's mouth was less wide and Rudolf's face was a little **thinner**.
- 3- ☒ The king said that Rassendyll was his '**pair**'.  
☒ The king said that Rassendyll was his '**double**'.
- 4- ☒ The King invited Rassendyll to eat with him in **Strelsau**.  
☒ The King invited Rassendyll to eat with him in **the hunting lodge**.
- 5- ☒ **The King** used the hunting lodge for hunting.  
☒ **Duke Michael** used the hunting lodge for hunting.
- 6- ☒ Sapt and Fritz would ride to **Strelsau** and return with a guard of soldiers to take the King to the station.  
☒ Sapt and Fritz would ride to **Zenda** and return with a guard of soldiers to take the King to the station.
- 7- ☒ **Rassendyll** ate a lot of cakes but **the king** ate only one cake.  
☒ **The king** ate a lot of cakes but **Rassendyll** ate only one cake.
- 8- ☒ Sapt throws **flowers** at Rassendyll to wake him up.  
☒ Sapt throws **water** at Rassendyll to wake him up.
- 9- ☒ Rassendyll thought that the cakes he and the king ate were **delicious**.  
☒ Rassendyll thought that the cakes he and the king ate were **poisonous**.
- 10- ☒ Fritz said that they had to tell the people of **Mauritania** that the king was ill.  
☒ Fritz said that they had to tell the people of **Ruritania** that the king was ill.
- 11- ☒ Sapt and Fritz believed that Duke **Robert** had poisoned the King.  
☒ Sapt and Fritz believed that Duke **Michael** had poisoned the King.
- 12- ☒ If Rudolf wasn't crowned on the specified day, **the king** would take the crown.  
☒ If Rudolf wasn't crowned on the specified day, **Duke Michael** would take the crown.
- 13- ☒ **Fritz** asked Rassendyll to pretend to be the King.  
☒ **Sapt** asked Rassendyll to pretend to be the King.
- 14- ☒ If **Duke Michael** didn't go to Strelsau, the King would either be dead or in prison.  
☒ If **Rassendyll** didn't go to Strelsau, the King would either be dead or in prison.
- 15- ☒ **Michael's men** hid the King in the cellar.  
☒ **Sapt and Fritz** hid the King in the cellar.
- 16- ☒ They planned to bring the **false** King back to Strelsau that same night.  
☒ They planned to bring the **real** King back to Strelsau that same night.
- 17- ☒ **Josef** and Johann's mother were locked in the cellar.  
☒ **The king** and Johann's mother were locked in the cellar.
- 18- ☒ **Johann** dressed Rassendyll in the King's clothes.  
☒ **Josef** dressed Rassendyll in the King's clothes.
- 19- ☒ On their way to the station, Sapt told **Fritz** the history of the King's life.  
☒ On their way to the station, Sapt told **Rassendyll** the history of the King's life.
- 20- ☒ Marshal Strakencz **realised** that Rassendyll is not the King.  
☒ Marshal Strakencz **didn't realise** that Rassendyll is not the King.

## **Homework ((A))**

### **A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Rassendyll and the king were speechless on looking at each other. Say why.
- 2- What differences could Rassendyll notice between him and the king?
- 3- What nickname did the king give to Rassendyll?
- 4- What was Sapt and Fritz's opinion about Rassendyll going to Strlsau?
- 5- Why did Sapt and Fritz object to Rassendyll's visit to Strlsau?
- 6- How was the king generous to Rassendyll?
- 7- Why didn't Sapt and Fritz eat too much?
- 8- Fritz and Sapt felt worried when the king started to eat. Illustrate
- 9- What was the king fond of?
- 10- How far was the king fond of food?
- 11- Why did Rassendyll eat much at dinner?
- 12- Which kind of food was sent by the Duke to the king?
- 13- The king was so kind that he couldn't see his brother's evil act. Explain
- 14- What did Sapt and Fritz do to wake Rassendyll up?
- 15- What happened to the king after eating the cakes sent by Duke Michael?
- 16- Why didn't Sapt agree to Fritz's opinion of telling people the truth about the king?
- 17- What did Rassendyll do to examine the king?
- 18- Why did Rassendyll think the king was poisoned?
- 19- Why would it be useless *بلا جدوى* to fetch *يحضر* a doctor to save the king?
- 20- What harm would the king have in case of his absence during the coronation?
- 21- The Duke's illegal ambitions made him a criminal . Say why.
- 22- Why wasn't Rassendyll as sick as the king ?
- 23- What would happen if the king wasn't crowned that day?

### **B) Read the following quotation and answer the questions:**

**1- " To Strlsau,sir. To the coronation ."**

- a)Who said these words to whom?
- b)Where did the speaker come from?
- c)Where would the speaker stay in Strlsau ?

**2- " Well done, Michael ! He knows me well ."**

- a)Who said these words to whom?
- b)What did the speaker mean by such words?
- c)What happened to the speaker soon after that ?

**3- " Do you think he was poisoned ."**

- a)Who said these words to whom?
- b Why did the speaker guess that " **he**" was poisoned?
- c)Why was it impossible to get a doctor?

**4-"I agree. He mustn't go. "**

- a)Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b)Who was the speaker talking about ?
- c) What did the speaker agree that he didn't have to go ?

**5-"We must tell everyone what's happened and make the most of it. "**

- a)Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) Where was this said ? When?

c) What must they tell everyone?

**6- "You don't know what the Duke is like, do you?"**

a) Who said these words? To whom?

b) According to the speaker, what was the Duke like?

c) What did the Duke do to prevent his brother from taking the crown?

**C) Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:**

1- The king woke up but only after throwing water over him.

2- Ruritania was waiting for the king in Paris.

3- Rassendyll met the king in the desert.

4- The king was pleased to meet his couple in the forest.

5- Rassendyll hoped to go Zenda to attend the coronation.

6- Sapt and Fritz were against the king's going to Strelsau.

7- The king's guards would take the king to attend the coronation in Strelsau.

8- When Rassendyll woke up, he found himself covered in mud.

9- The Duke's pulse was very weak and slow.

10- Even a thousand paramedics wouldn't make the king better that day.

11- Fritz suggested telling people of Ruritania that the king was well.

12- Michael didn't want Rassendyll to attend the coronation.

## **Homework ((B))**

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1- What was Sapt's plan concerning **بخصوص** the coronation?

2- How did Sapt and Fritz persuade Rassendyll to replace the king at the coronation?

3- Why was it important for Sapt and Fritz to leave before Michael's men arrived?

4- Where was the king hidden so as not to be found by Michael's men?

5- How would they get the king to Strelsau after the coronation?

6- Why did Rassendyll think it would be impossible for him to replace the king?

7- How would Michael benefit from the king's absence during the coronation?

8- Why was Johan's Mother locked with the king?

9- What did they do with Johann's mother who was overhearing them?

10- What was Josef's role in Sapt's plan?

11- How did Sapt help Rassendyll to play his role as the king well?

12- What did Fritz tell the surprised-looking station guards?

13- Why didn't Sapt, Fritz and Rassendyll expect anyone to meet them at the station?

14- How was Rudolf Rassendyll received at Strelsau Station?

15- What do you know about Marshal Stakenetz?

16- class Distinction was evident in Strelsau. **Illustrate**

17- What did Rassendyll do when a flower fell on his horse? What was the Marshal's reaction?

18- What was the attitude of the people of the new part towards the new king?



19- The people of the old part of Strelsau had much confidence in Michael. Illustrate

20-Why did Rassendyll feel frightened when he saw Antoinette de Mauban?

**B) Read the following quotation and answer the questions:**

**1- " What if they search the building ?"**

- a)Who said these words to whom?
- b)Who is the speaker talking about?
- c) What would they search the building for ?

**2- " Is all safe here?"**

- a)Who said these words to whom?
- b) What does " **here** " refer to?
- c)What was the listener's reply ?

**3- "Nervous, I'm not made of stone."**

- a)Who said these words to whom?
- b)Why was the speaker nervous?
- c)Why did the speaker's feeling change soon after that ?

**4- " Let's hope we're all alive tonight. "**

- a)Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b)Why did the speaker hope they are all alive that night?
- c) Where was that said?

**5- " Josef will say the hunting lodge is empty.This is our only chance . "**

- a)Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) Who was Josef ?
- c)What did the speaker mean by saying "**this is our only chance**"?

**6- "God save both kings . "**

- a)Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b)When did the speaker say this?
- c) Who was the speaker talking about?

**C) Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:**

1-The real king would be either dead or prisoner if Rassendyll became the king.

2- It was a brave thing of Rassendyll to agree to attend the wedding.

3- Rassendyll went from Zenda to Strelsau by plane.

4- The king was hidden in the ditch in the hunting lodge.

5- It was planned to go back to Strelsau to fetch the king after the coronation.

6- Sapt and Fritz made use of the differences between Rassendyll and the king.

7- When Amelia saw the Rassendyll, her face expression changed.

8- People throw stones down from balconies above the king( Rassendyll)

9- Rassendyll rode through the capital with the Marshal on his right and Fritz on his left.

10-Fritz persuaded Rassendyll to take the king's place saying that his English was perfect.

# Chapter 3

Dressed as	يتنكر في زي....	Pretend	يتظاهر / يدعى
Recognize	يتعرف على	let him in	يسمح له بالدخول
Loyal	مخلص	Proudly	بفخر
Route	طريق	set off	يبدأ رحلة
ahead of	أمام	Panel	لوحة / جزء بارز من الجدار
Support	يؤيد	Passage	ممر
think carefully	يفكر بعناية	Unlock	يفتح
Trust	يثق في	stay low	
shook his head	هز رأسه	Gates	بوابات
Nevertheless	و مع ذلك	knock on	يطرق على
Act like a king	يتصرف كملك	be relieved	يشعر بالراحة
Anxious	قلق / عصبي	Coin	عملة
Position	موقف	Danger	خطر
Out of sight	بعيد عن مرمى البصر	Celebrate	يحتفل بـ
lined with	مصطف على الجانب	clear night	ليلة صافية
Cheer	يحيى	slow down	يبطئ
close to	قريب من	Eventually	في النهاية
Skin	جلد	Fork	مفترق / طرق
Angrily	بغضب	Whisper	يهمس
Anger	غضب	Trap	مصيدة
Get off the horse	ينزل من على الحصان	lift up	يرفع
Briefly	باختصار	point at	يشاور على
expression	تعبير	shoot / shot / shot	يطلق النار على
Relief	راحة	Puzzle	لغز
Crown	التاج	Torn	ممزق
Details	تفاصيل	Handkerchiefs	مناديل
promises	وعود	Candle	شمعة
announce	يعلن	Fight	قتال / شجار
most of all	علاوة على ذلك	Meanwhile	في تلك الأثناء
Anyway	على أية حال	Kidnap	يخطف (شخص)
Coach	عربة يجرها الخيل	Collect	يجمع
wedding	زفاف	tie up	يقيد
Serious	جاد / خطير	Fasten	يثبت / يربط
appreciate	يقدر	Cheeks	خدود
exhausted	مرهق / منهك	all of a sudden	فجأة
Popular with	محبوب لدى	Place	يضع
Permit	تصريح	Notice	يلاحظ
Form	وثيقة	Success	نجاح
Sign	يوقع على	Safely	بأمان
signature	توقيع	Somehow	إلى حد ما
copy = imitate	ينسخ / يقلد	Ambassador	سفير

## The Text

1-Dressed as the King of Ruritania, I rode on through the streets of Strelsau towards the palace, expecting to hear Antoinette de Mauban tell everyone that I was not really the King. Yet I heard no one calling out, and I did not look back. Perhaps she had not recognised me after all. I heard Marshal Strakencz give an order to his men and we suddenly entered a poor part of the town where the people were loyal to Duke Michael.

**"Why have we changed our route?"** I asked the Marshal.

**"It's better this way,"** he explained.

Surely this way, however, was into a part of town where the people supported Duke Michael? How could this be a better way for the King? I stopped my horse and thought carefully.

١- كنت مرتديا زيا وكأني ملك روريثيا ، سرت راكبا الجواد في شوارع العاصمة سترلسو متجها إلى القصر وكنت متوقعا أن اسمع انتونيت دو موبان تخبر الجميع أنني لست الملك الحقيقي. لكن لم يحدث شيئا من ذلك ، لذا لم انظر خلفي . ربما لم تتعرف علي. سمعت المشير ستراكنتش يعطي أمرا لرجاله وفجأة دخلنا منطقة من المدينة فقيرة وبدائية حيث كان الناس هناك موالين للدوق مايكل. سألت المشير "لماذا قمنا بتغيير وجهتنا؟". فأوضح لي قائلا "من الأفضل أن نسلك هذا الطريق " بالتأكيد بدأت أتساءل إذا كان الناس بهذا الجزء من المدينة موالين للدوق مايكل؟ فكيف يمكن أن يكون أفضل طريق للملك؟ أوقفت جوادي وبدأت أفكر بعناية

2-Perhaps this was the Marshal's plan to test me.

**"Tell your soldiers to ride ahead of me,"** I told the Marshal. **"I don't need them or you. You can wait here until I've continued through the old town alone. I want the people who live here to see that their King trusts them."**

Sapt looked worried and shook his head. I could see that he thought that this was a very bad idea. **Nevertheless**, if I was to be a king, I decided I wanted to act like a king. All of my people should like me, not just a few.

**"Don't you understand me? Tell your soldiers to go!"** I shouted.

The Marshal looked surprised but gave the orders for his soldiers to go ahead, and Sapt's face looked even more **anxious**. I realised that if I were killed in this part of town, Sapt's position would become very difficult.

-ربما كانت هذه خطة المشير لاختباري. أخبرت المشير: "أجعل جنودك يتقدمون حيث انه لا حاجة لي بهم. يمكنكم الانتظار هنا لأنني أريد أن أسير بمفردي في هذا الجزء من المدينة. أريد الناس الذين يعيشون هنا أن يدركوا أن ملكهم يثق بهم". بدا العقيد سابت قلقا وهز رأسه. أدركت انه يعتقد أن هذه الفكرة سيئة للغاية. ومع ذلك، قررت أن أتصرف مثل الملك ، ينبغي لجميع شعبي أن يحبني، وليس فقط القليل منهم. صرخت في المشير قائلا: "ألا تفهمني؟ أخبر جنودك ان يذهبوا بعيدا!" بدأت الدهشة تطو وجه المشير ولكنه أعطى الأوامر لجنوده على المضى قدما، وبدا وجه العقيد سابت أكثر قلقا. أدركت من قلقة هذا أنه إذا قتلت في هذا الجزء من المدينة، فإن موقفه سيصبح صعبا للغاية.



3-When all the soldiers were out of sight, I rode on my own through the streets of the old town. Now that I was alone on my horse, I realised how white, how clean my uniform seemed compared to the old buildings around me. The narrow streets were lined with hundreds of people and I could feel their

eyes on me. First people talked quietly, but then I started to hear cheering. I was so close to the people in this poor area that I could easily hear what the people were saying about me.

**"I'm surprised that he's on his own, but he's taller than I thought,"** said one.

**"His skin's very white,"** said another.

Although some people smiled and cheered, others were quiet and looked at me angrily. I saw many paintings of the Duke in their windows and I knew what they thought of me.

Despite their anger, I reached the outside of the palace safely and I got off my horse. Briefly I saw Sapt, whose expression was one of relief that I was still alive.

عندما أصبح الجنود بعيدا عن الأنظار، بدأت أسير وحدي في شوارع البلدة القديمة. ولقد أدركت حينئذ مدي نصاعة ثيابي ونظافتها مقارنة بالمباني القديمة من حولي في هذا الجزء من المدينة. واصطف المئات من الناس في الشوارع الضيقة ولقد شعرت بعيونهم علي. بداية تحدث الناس بهدوء، ولكن بعد ذلك بدأت اسمع الهتاف. كنت قريبا جدا من الناس في هذه المنطقة الفقيرة لدرجة أنني كنت أسمع بسهولة ما يقولونه عني. قال احدهم: "أنا مندهش أنه بمفرده، لكنه أطول مما كنت أعتقد"، وقال آخر: "إن جلده ناصع البياض" و بالرغم من أن بعض الناس كان مبتسما ويهتف، إلا أن البعض الآخر بدا عليه الهدوء وكان ينظر إلي بغضب. رأيت العديد من الصور واللوحات للدوق مايكل معلقة في النوافذ وأدركت ما يجيش في خاطرهم نحوي. ، وصلت إلى خارج القصر بأمان على الرغم من غضبهم ونزلت من على جوادي. بدا الارتياح يعلوا وجه العقيد سابت لأنني مازلت على قيد الحياة.

4-It was now almost time for the coronation and a group of soldiers led me inside a beautiful building. There were so many people that I did not know who was doing what. But I remember a beautiful young woman with red hair, who I knew was Princess Flavia, and a man with red cheeks, dark eyes and dark hair who I knew must be Michael. When he saw me, his face became white: until that moment, I do not think he realised that the King had come to Strelsau.

What can I remember of that coronation that was so important to the future of Ruritania? Very little, except the golden crown being placed on my head and a few other details. I remember the promises I was asked to read out, and the beautiful music that played when someone announced that Rudolf the Fifth was now King of Ruritania. Most of all, I remember being greeted by Duke Michael, whose hands shook with anger when he took his hand in mine, and who would not look at my eyes as he coldly said, "**Congratulations.**"

وقد حان الوقت الآن للتتويج رافقتني مجموعة من الجنود داخل مبنى جميل. كان هناك العديد من الناس لدرجة أنني لم أكن أعرف ما الذي كان يقوم به كل منهم. ولكن أتذكر امرأة شابة جميلة ذات شعر احمر، وعلمت أنها الأميرة فلافيا، ورجل ذو خدود حمراء، وأعين وشعر داكن علمت أنه أكيد الدوق مايكل. أصبح وجهه شاحبا للحظة عندما رأي لدرجة أنني ظننت انه لم يصدق أن الملك قد جاء إلى العاصمة سترلساو. كل ما أتذكره فيما يتعلق بهذا التتويج هو أنه كان ذا أهمية بالغة لمستقبل روريتانيا؟ كذلك اذكر القليل جدا، من الطقوس مثل التاج الذهبي حين وضع على رأسي وبعض التفاصيل الأخرى. أتذكر أيضا بعضا من العهود والعود التي طلب مني أن أتلوها على المستمعين، والموسيقى الجميلة التي تم عزفها عندما قام شخصا معلنا أن رودولف الخامس قد أصبح الآن ملك روريتانيا. والأهم من ذلك كله، أتذكر استقبال وترحيب الدوق مايكل، حينما مد يده ليصافحني وهو يعلوه الغضب، ومتجنباً النظر في عيني مرددا ببرود: "تهانينا".

5-However, no one else, not even the Princess, seemed to realise that I was not the real King. So there I stood in the palace for an hour, as if I had always been a king, greeting the many ambassadors and important people who came to see me. I became worried when a man I knew from England, Lord Topham, also came to greet me, but his eyes were so poor that he probably would not have noticed me anyway.

It was now time for me to go in a coach around the streets with the Princess. "**When's the wedding?**" I heard someone call, and I wished I had asked Sapt the answer to that very question.

At that moment, the Princess looked at me and said, "**Do you know, Rudolf, you look different today? You look more tired and serious,**

**and I think you're thinner. I can't believe that you really have changed today."**

**"I think I want to change now that I'm King,"** I replied.

**"Perhaps you already have. I heard that you rode through the old town alone,"** she continued. **"That surprised me. The people there must really have appreciated what you did."**

I smiled. **"I hope I'll make a good King,"** I said.

ومع ذلك، لا يبدو أن ثمة أحد آخر، ولا حتى الأميرة، أدرك أنني لم أكن الملك الحقيقي. لذلك وقفت في القصر لمدة ساعة، كما لو كنت الملك فعلا، استقبل التهاني والتحية من العديد من السفراء والأشخاص المهمين والذين جاءوا لرؤيتي. أصبحت قلقا عندما رأيت رجلا من إنجلترا كنت أعرفه يدعى ، لورد توفام، جاء لتحييتي ، ولكنه كان ضعيف النظر لدرجة أنه لم يتعرف علي. وقد حان الوقت لي الآن الذهاب في سيارة برفقة الأميرة في شوارع المدينة. ولقد سأل سائل وقال: "متى حفل الزفاف؟" وتمنيت لو كنت قد طلبت من العقيد سابت معرفة الجواب على هذا السؤال بالذات. في تلك اللحظة، نظرت الأميرة إلي وقالت: "أتعلم، يارودولف، أنك تبدو مختلفا اليوم؟ فانت تبدو متعبا وأكثر جدية، وأعتقد أنك شاحبا. لا أستطيع أن أصدق أن كنت حقا قد تغيرت اليوم". فقلت لها "أعتقد أنني يجب أن أتغير الآن بعد أن أصبحت الملك"، استطردت قائلة "ربما تغيرت بالفعل. لقد سمعت أنك سرت بمفردك في البلدة القديمة"، "لقد أدهشني ذلك كثيرا واعتقد أن الناس هناك قدروا صنيعك هذا". "ابتسمت. وقلت لها "أمل أنا أكون ملكا صالحا".

6-The coach had now arrived back at the palace and, once inside the building, I took my seat at my own table, next to Duke Michael, with Sapt behind me and Fritz nearby. I felt like a king, but I also thought, where is the real King and what is he doing now?

Later that afternoon, I sat down on my bed feeling exhausted. Sapt and Fritz were still by my side, now looking very happy that our plan had been a success.

**"That was a day to remember!"** said Fritz. **"I think I'd like to be King for a day. But Rassendyll, you mustn't try too hard. I'm not sure it was a good idea to ride alone through the old town. Duke Michael won't like it if you become too popular with his people, you know."**

**"Well, in a few hours, I'll become Rudolf Rassendyll once more,"** I said, remembering that I would be King only until that night.

**"Only if you stay alive as long as that,"** said Sapt. **"Michael's had news from Zenda and he's almost certainly planning something. You must leave the country as soon as you can. But you need a permit to leave the city."**

عادت الآن السيارة إلى القصر، و بداخل المبنى، أخذت مقعدي على طاولة ، بجوار الدوق مايكل ، ومن ورائي سابت وفريتز. شعرت وكأني الملك حقا، ولكن في ذات الوقت ظللت أفكر في الملك الحقيقي ، أين هو وماذا يفعل الآن؟ في وقت لاحق بعد ظهر ذلك اليوم، جلست على سريرتي وشعرت ببعض التعب. وكان سابت وفريتز لا يزالان بجانبي، وبدا في غاية السعادة حيث أن خطتنا كانت ناجحة. وقال فريتز: "إن ذلك اليوم لن ينسى!". "أعتقد أنني كنت أحب أن أصبح الملك ولو ليوم واحد، ولكن ياراسندل، يجب عليك ألا تجازف ، فلم تكن فكرة سيرك بمفردك في المدينة القديمة جيدة على ما أظن. كما أن الدوق مايكل لن يرضي أن تصبح ذا شعبية في مناطق نفوذه" ، قلت له "حسنا، في غضون ساعات قليلة، سوف أصبح رودولف راسندل مرة أخرى"، وأتذكر جيدا أنني الملك حتى هذه الليلة فقط " فقال العقيد سابت "ذلك إن بقيت على قيد الحياة حتى هذه الليلة"، "فلقد تلقى مايكل أخبار من زندا ومن المؤكد انه يخطط لشيء ما، لذا يجب أن تغادر البلاد في أقرب وقت ممكن. ولكنك بحاجة إلى تصريح لمغادرة المدينة".

7- **"Who can I get a permit from?"** I asked.

**"The King, of course,"** said Sapt, putting on a table a form for me to sign and a paper with the King's signature for me to copy.

**"Look, I can pretend to be the King because I look like him,"** I said.

**"That doesn't mean I can write like him too!"**

**"Oh, it's not hard to copy,"** said Sapt, and he did it easily for me.

**"Now, remember our plan. I'll go with you, Rassendyll,"** said Sapt.

**"Now, Fritz, you will tell everyone that the King's gone to bed and that he's not to be woken by anybody until nine o'clock tomorrow morning. Do you understand, Fritz? No one."**

**"I understand,"** said Fritz.

**"Michael may try to visit,"** continued Sapt, **"but you mustn't let him in, even if your life depends on it."**

**"I don't need to be told that,"** said Fritz, proudly.

**"Here, put on this big coat and hat,"** Sapt said to me.

فسألته: "من مَن يمكنني الحصول على هذا التصريح؟" فقال لي: "الملك، بطبيعة الحال"، ووضع على الطاولة استمارة على أن أوقع عليها وبعض الأوراق التي تحمل توقيع الملك وكان على أن أقرأها فقلت له "انظر، أستطيع أن أدعي أنني الملك لأنني أشبهه، ولكن هذا لا يعني أنني يمكن فصاح في قانلا: "ليس من الصعب أن تقلد وقام بتقليد التوقيع بنفسه وبسهولة" وقال لي: "الآن، تذكر خطتنا. سأذهب معك، أن أكتب مثله أيضا!" يا راسندل"، "وأنت يا فريتز عليك أن تخبر الجميع أن الملك قد ذهب إلى فراشه، وأنه لن يستيقظ حتى التاسعة من صباح اليوم الغد. هل تفهم، يا فريتز؟ لا أحد." فقال فريتز "أنا أفهم"، وتابع سابت حديثه مخاطبا فريتز قانلا "مايكل قد حاول زيارة الملك ولكن يجب ألا تسمح له بذلك، حتى لو كلفك هذا الأمر حياتك" فقال فريتز، وبفخر "أنا لست بحاجة إلى أن تذكرني بذلك" قال لي سابت "ارتدي هذا المعطف الكبير وهذه القبعة"

8- **"Now, are you ready to go?"** Sapt said to me

**"I'm ready,"** I said. I shook Fritz's hand and set off – not through the door but through a **panel** in the wall which led to a dark **passage**.

**"In the old King's time, I knew all about this secret passage,"** Sapt explained.

I followed Sapt down the long, dark passage which ended in a heavy wooden door. Sapt unlocked it and we went out into a quiet street which ran along the back of the palace gardens. A man was waiting for us with two horses. Without saying anything, we climbed onto the horses and rode away.

At that time of the day, the town was busy and full of noise, but we took the quiet back streets. My coat and hat covered my face and hair, and I tried to stay low on the horse so no one would recognise me.

وقال لي أيضا "الآن، هل أنت على استعداد للذهاب؟" فأخبرته "أنا مستعد"، صافحت فريتز وانطلقت – ولكن ليس من خلال الباب ولكن من خلال باب خلفي في الجدار يؤدي إلى ممر مظلم. وأوضح لي سابت قانلا "منذ عهد الملك السابق وأنا أعرف كل شيء عن هذا الممر السري". تبعت العقيد سابت عبر الممر الطويل والمظلم والذي كان ينتهي بباب خشبي ضخم ففتحه وخرجنا إلى شارع هادئ على امتداد الجزء الخلفي من حدائق القصر. كان هناك رجل في انتظارنا ومعه اثنين من الخيول. دون أن نقول أي شيء، ركبنا الخيول وانطلقنا. في ذلك الوقت من اليوم، كانت المدينة مزدحمة وملينة بالضجيج، ولكننا سلطنا الشوارع الخلفية الهادئة. ولقد غطي معطفي وجهي وشعري، وحاولت أن أظل منخفضا على الحصان حتى لا يتعرف علي أحد.

9- **"Take your gun,"** said Sapt. **"You may need it to get through the city gates. They'll all be closed at this time of day."**

It was half past six and still light when we reached one of the tall wooden gates through the city walls. Sapt knocked on the gate, and we were very relieved when a few seconds later, a girl of about fourteen appeared.

**"My father's not here, I'm afraid. He's gone to see the King,"** she said.

**"Your father should have stayed here,"** said Sapt.

**"But he told me not to open the gate for anyone,"** said the girl.

**"Then you must give me the key to open it,"** said Sapt. **"Here's a form from the King himself. You can show it to your father when he returns."** Sapt then gave the girl the signed form and a coin and took the key from her hand. We quickly opened the gate, led our horses out, and closed it again behind us.

**"Now we must move quickly,"** Sapt told me as we got back on the horses.

وقال سابت "خذ مسدسك معك فقد تحتاج إليه عند الخروج من خلال بوابات المدينة. سوف تكون جميعا مغلقة في هذا الوقت من اليوم." كانت الساعة لا تزال ٦:٣٠ والضوء لا يزال موجودا عندما وصلنا إلى واحدة من البوابات الخشبية العالية. طرقت سابت على باب ، وهذأت أعصابنا



عندما فتحت لنا فتاة ، وهي حوالى في الرابعة عشر من عمرها قائلة: "للأسف والدي ليس هنا، انه ذهب لرؤية الملك"، فقال لها سابت "والدك كان يجب أن يبقى هنا" قالت لنا: "لكن والدي اخبرني ألا أفتح البوابة لأي أحد" فقال لها سابت "إذا عليك أن تعطيني المفتاح لأفتح بنفسى وتفضلنى استمارة موقعة من الملك شخصيا ، ويمكنك أن تعطيها لوالدك عندما يعود." ثم أعطى الفتاة الاستمارة الموقعة وعملة معدنية وأخذ المفتاح من يدها. وفتحنا الباب بسرعة، وأخرجنا الخيول، وإغلاقنا الباب مرة أخرى وراعنا. اخبرني سابت عندما عدنا إلى الخيول قائلا: "الآن يجب علينا أن نتحرك وبسرعة".

10-Once we were outside the city, there was little danger, as nearly everyone was in the streets celebrating the coronation. It became a clear night, with a shining moon, and soon we began to talk.

**"What do you think the Duke knows about our plan?"** I said.

**"I don't know,"** said Sapt.

A little later, we stopped at an inn so that our horses could have a drink, and this lost us half an hour. We then continued and had gone around forty kilometres from the city when Sapt suddenly stopped. It was nearly half past nine.

**"Listen,"** he cried. **"I can hear something."**

Far behind us we could just hear the noise of horses coming towards us. I looked at Sapt and saw worry on his face.

**"We're lucky that the wind's blowing towards us so we can hear them. Come on!"** he called, and we set off fast. After some time, we

stopped again and could not hear the other horses, so we slowed down and thought we could relax. However, a little farther we stopped once more and this time we heard them.

عندما كنا خارج المدينة، كان هناك خطر ضئيل، حيث كان الجميع تقريبا في الشوارع للاحتفال بالتتويج. كما أن الليلة كانت قمرية ، وسرعان ما بدأنا بعد قليل، توقفنا في نزل (فندق صغير) لتسرب الخيول، ولكن هذا ضيع الحديث فقلت لسابت "ما رأيك هل يعلم الدوق بخطتنا؟" فقال لي "أنا لا أعرف" علينا نصف ساعة وبعد ذلك تابعنا المسير لمسافة نحو أربعين كيلومترا من المدينة وفجأة توقف سابت ، وكانت الساعة حوالى التاسعة النصف. صاح سابت قائلا "استمع" "يمكنني أن أسمع شيئا ما." فسمعنا وراعنا صوت ضجيج من الخيول متجهه نحونا ورأيت القلق قد ظهر على وجه سابت الذي قال "نحن محظوظون أن الرياح تهب في اتجاهنا وهذا يجعلنا نسمعهم. هيا بنا!" وانطلقنا بسرعة. وبعد مرور بعض الوقت، توقفنا مرة أخرى لكننا لم نتمكن من سماع الخيول الأخرى، لذلك سرنا ببطء وظننا انه بإمكاننا الاسترخاء قليلا. ، ولكن بعد قليل توقفنا مرة أخرى وهذه المرة سمعنا ضجيج الخيول.

11-Sapt got off his horse and put his ear to the ground. **"I think there're two horses,"** he said. **"They're about two kilometres behind."**

We went on quickly and eventually we reached the tall, dark trees of the forest of Zenda and stopped at a fork in the road. One road went deep into the forest, the other went outside the forest towards the town.

**"To the right's our road, to the left's the castle. Now, get off your horse."**

**"Get off? But they'll catch us!"** I said.

**"Get off your horse!"** he repeated angrily, and I did what he asked. We took the horses into the dark trees and waited quietly where we could see the road, but they (whoever they were) could not see us. I saw that Sapt had a gun in his hand.

**"Do you want to see who they are?"** I whispered.

**"Yes, and where they're going,"** Sapt answered.

نزل سابت عن حصانه ووضع أذنه على الأرض. وقال: "أعتقد أن هناك اثنين من الخيول" وقال: "إنهم على بعد حوالى كيلومترين وراعنا." ذهبنا بسرعة وفي النهاية وصلنا إلى الأشجار طويلة القامة، من الغابة المظلمة من زندا وتوقفنا عند مفترق الطريق. كان هناك طريق يؤدي إلى عمق الغابة، والطريق الآخر يؤدي إلى المدينة. فقال سابت "إلى اليمين طريقنا وإلى اليسار القلعة. الآن، انزل من على الحصان." فقلت له "انزل؟ ولكنهم سوف يلحقون بنا!" ففكر سابت غاضبا: "انزل من على الحصان!" ، ففعلت ما طلب مني. أخذنا الخيول في ظلام الأشجار وانتظرنا بهدوء حيث يمكننا أن نرى الطريق، لكن (أيا كان المار بالطريق) لا يمكن أن يرانا. رأيت أن سابت كان يحمل مسدسا في يده. فهمست لسابت قائلا له: "هل تريد أن ترى من هم؟" فقال لي: "نعم، وأين هم ذاهبون"



12- Soon we could hear the horses getting nearer and nearer. The moon was full now so we could see the road clearly. "Here they come!" Sapt whispered. "Look, it's the Duke!"

On the road through the forest, I could see the Duke and a strong-looking man who Sapt later told me was Max Holf, brother to Johann who I had seen at the inn. When they reached the fork in the road, they stopped.

**"Which way?"** asked Duke Michael.



**"I think. we should go to the castle where we can learn the truth,"** said Max.

**"Why not the hunting lodge?"** said Michael.

**"If all's well, why go there? And if all isn't well, I fear there'll be a trap."**

The Duke did not move and seemed to be listening.

**"I thought I heard something,"** he said quietly.

و بعدها مباشرة استطعنا أن نسمع الخيول وهي تقترب شينا فشيناً. كان القمر مكتملاً الأمر الذي مكنا من أن نرى الطريق بوضوح. فهمس سابت قائلًا "هاهم قد وصلوا!" فقلت لسابت "انظر، انه الدوق!" على الطريق عبر الغابة، رأيت الدوق ورجل قوي المظهر الذي اخبرني عنه سابت في وقت لاحق انه ماكس هولف، شقيق جوهان الخادم الذي رأيته في النزل (الفندق الصغير). توقفوا عندما وصلوا إلى مفترق طرق. فسأل الدوق مايكل "أي الطرق نسلك؟". فقال له ماكس هولف "اعتقد، يجب أن نذهب إلى القلعة حيث يمكننا معرفة الحقيقة"، فقال له الدوق: "ولماذا لا نذهب إلى كوخ الصيد؟" فقال ماكس: "إذا كان الأمر على ما يرام فلماذا نذهب هناك؟ وان لم يكن الأمر كذلك أخشى أن يكون هناك فخ." لم يتحرك الدوق وبدأ وكأنه يستمع إلى شيء ما فقال بهدوء: "ظننت أنني سمعت شيئاً".

13-I saw Sapt lift up his gun, but the Duke then said, **"To Zenda, then,"** and they set off once more.

I could see that Sapt still held up his gun and was pointing it at the Duke, but although I knew he would have loved to shoot, he realised it would not have helped the King at this moment. He put his gun away once more.

We waited silently for ten minutes before we came out from the trees.

**"So, he's had news that all is well,"** said Sapt.

**"What does that mean?"** I asked.

**"I wish I knew,"** said Sapt. **"It's a real puzzle."**

We rode on through the forest as fast as our tired horses would allow. We said nothing, and I thought about what the Duke had said. What did "all is well" mean? Was all well with the King?

It did not take us long to reach the hunting lodge where we had left the King and quickly jump off our horses. The lodge was dark and quiet and no one came out to meet us. All of a sudden, Sapt took hold of my arm.

**"Look there!"** he said, pointing at five or six **torn** and dirty handkerchiefs on the ground.

**"That's what I used to tie up the old woman. Fasten the horses and let's see what's happened."**

رأيت سابت يرفع مسدسه، ولكن الدوق قال: "إلى زندا إذاً" وانطلقا مرة أخرى. ورأيت أن سابت ما زال مصوباً مسدسه نحو الدوق، ولكن على الرغم من أنني أعرف أنه تمنى أن يطلق النار، إلا أنه أدرك أن ذلك لن يساعد الملك في هذه اللحظة. فوضع مسدسه بعيداً مرة أخرى. انتظرنا بهدوء لمدة عشر دقائق قبل أن نخرج من بين الأشجار. فقل سابت "إذا قد تلقى مايكل إخباراً تقول له، أن كل شيء على ما يرام" فسألته "ماذا يعني انطلقنا خلال الغابة وبأقصى سرعة رغم تعب الخيول. لم نقل شيئاً، وفكرت في ما قاله الدوق. ذلك؟" فقال لي "ليتنى اعلم"، "أنه لغز حقيقي." "وماذا تعني عبارة كل شيء على ما يرام" هل كل شيء على ما يرام فيما يتعلق بالملك؟ لم نستغرق وقتاً طويلاً للوصول إلى كوخ الصيد حيث كنا قد تركنا الملك ونزلنا بسرعة من على الخيول وكان الكوخ مظلماً وهادئاً ولم يأتي أي أحد لاستقبالنا. فجأة أمسك سابت بذراعي وقال لي "انظر هناك!" مشيراً إلى خمسة أو ستة مناديل ممزقة وفذرة على الأرض. "هذا ما كنت قد استخدمته لربط المرأة العجوز. اربط الخيول ودعنا نرى ما حدث."

14-The front door to the lodge was not locked and we went into the room where I had eaten the night before. Plates and cups were still on the table.

**"Come on,"** said Sapt, and we ran down the passage towards the cellar where we had left the King. But the door to the cellar was open.

**"So they found the old woman,"** I said.

**"I realised that when I saw the handkerchiefs,"** said Sapt.

**"Where's Josef and the King?"** I asked.

We found another door inside the cellar that was locked, and it took a lot of work to get it open. It was dark inside and completely silent and I could see Sapt was looking very worried. He loved the King and would have hated anything bad to have happened to him. So I told him to stay where he was and went inside the room with a **candle**.

There were a lot of things on the floor of the dark room, as if there had been a fight. I held up the candle and saw spiders on the walls, then, far in one corner, I saw a body.

I slowly went back outside the room to tell Sapt what I had seen.

**"It's not good news. I'm afraid he's dead,"** I said.

**"The King?"** he cried, putting his hand over his mouth.

**"No, the body's Josef. The King's not there."**

لم يتم قفل الباب الأمامي للكوخ وذهبنا إلى الغرفة حيث تناولنا العشاء في الليلة الماضية. وكانت الأطباق والكؤوس لا تزال على الطاولة. فقال سابت "هيا"، وأسرعنا لأسفل الممر نحو القبو حيث تركنا الملك. ولكن كان باب القبو مفتوحاً. فقلت لسابت "إذا قد وجدوا المرأة العجوز"، فقال لي "أدركت ذلك عندما رأيت مناديل" فسألته "أين جوزيف والملك؟" وجدنا باب آخر داخل القبو ولكنه كان مغلقاً، واستغرق الكثير من الوقت لفتحه. وكان الظلام والهدوء يخيمان على المكان بالداخل كان سابت قلقاً للغاية فقد كان يجب الملك وكان يكره أن يصيبه مكروه. فطلبت منه البقاء بالخارج ودخلت الغرفة وبيدي شمعة. كان هناك العديد من الأشياء بأرضية الغرفة المظلمة، كما لو كان هناك قتال. أمسكت الشمعة ورأيت العناكب على الجدران، ورأيت جسداً بأحد أركان الغرفة. ذهبت ببطء مرة أخرى خارج الغرفة لأخبر سابت عما رأيت فقلت له "إنها ليست أخبار سارة. أخشى أنه ميت،" فصاح قائلاً "الملك؟" ووضع يده على فمه. فقلت له "لا، إنه جسد جوزيف و الملك ليس هناك."

15-I closed the heavy door behind me and we walked with heavy hearts back from the cellar to the dining room.

**"So, they've got the King!"** said Sapt, sitting down heavily with his hands over his face.

**"That's why they said that all's well. But when did they find out?"** I asked.

**"Michael must've known all day,"** said Sapt.

**"What did he think when he met me, then? He knew I was not the real King!"**

**"It doesn't matter what he thought then," said Sapt. "What matters is what he thinks now!"**

**"We must get back and collect every soldier in Strelsau. Michael will have to be caught before the King is killed."**

**"Wait," said Sapt. "We need to think. It must've been the old woman who told them what had happened somehow. I understand now. They came here to kidnap the King and they found him in that room in the cellar. If we hadn't escaped to Strelsau, we would've been killed."**

**"So where's the King now?"** I asked.

**"I have no idea," he said. "But you could see at the coronation that Duke Michael's really worried. Let's think about how we can worry him a bit more."**

أغلقت الباب وراني ومشينا بقلوب ترتعد خوفا ونحن عائدین من القبو إلى غرفة الطعام. فقال سابت وهو يجلس واضعا يده على وجهه: "إذًا، هم يتحفظون على الملك!" "لهذا السبب قالوا إن كل شيء على ما يرام هنا. فسألته "ولكن متى علموا بذلك؟" فأجابني قائلا "أكيد مايكل كان يعلم منذ بداية اليوم" فتساءلت "ماذا كان يظن عندما قابلني، حينئذ؟ علم أنني لم أكن الملك الحقيقي!" فقال سابت "لا يهم ماذا كان يعتقد ذلك الحين،". "ما بهم هو ما يفكر فيه الآن!" "يجب علينا أن نعود ونجمع كل جندي في سترلسو. مايكل لا بد أن يقبض عليه قبل أن يقتل الملك." فقال سابت: "مهلا" وأضاف قائلا: "إننا بحاجة إلى التفكير، أكيد المرأة العجوز أخبرتهم بخطتنا بطريقة أو بأخرى. لقد فهمت الآن. جاءوا إلى هنا لخطف الملك ووجدوه في تلك الغرفة في القبو. وإذا لم تكن قد غادرنا إلى سترلسو لقتلنا". فسألته: "فأين الملك الآن؟" فقال لي: "ليس لدي فكرة،". وأضاف "لكنك يمكنك أن تدرك أن الدوق مايكل كان يبدو عليه القلق أثناء التتويج. دعنا نفكر كيف يمكننا أن نجعله يقلق أكثر قليلا."

16-A clock in the house struck one as Sapt stood up with a smile, and I could see that he had another plan.

**"We'll go back to Strelsau," he said excitedly. "The King will be back in the capital again tomorrow!"**

**"How is that possible if we don't know where he is?"**

**"We'll go back to Strelsau and continue with the game we started."**

**You've done a good job until now, so why not continue?"**

**"Do you mean you want me to be the King again?"** I asked.

**"Yes, I do!"** he cried.

دقت الساعة المعلقة بالمنزل تمام الواحدة ووقف سابت مبتسما، وأدركت انه لديه خطة أخرى. فقال بحماس: "إننا سوف نعود إلى سترلسو" وأضاف أن: "الملك سوف يعود مرة أخرى إلى العاصمة غدا!" فسألته: "كيف يكون ذلك ممكنا ونحن لا نعرف أين هو؟" فقال "سوف نعود إلى سترلسو ونستمر في اللعبة التي بدأناها. لقد قمت بدور الملك بشكل جيد حتى الآن، لذلك لماذا لا نستمر؟" فقلت له: "هل تعني أنك تريد مني أن أكون الملك مرة أخرى؟" فصاح قائلا: "نعم"

## **Questions & Answers**

**1- What order أمر did Marshal Strakencz give to his men? What was Rassendyll's opinion رأى of that?**

He gave an order to his men to change route الطريق and enter the poor part of the town. He thought that perhaps the Marshal was testing يختبر him.

**2- What kind نوع of people lived in the old part of the city?**

The people in the old part were poor and many of them were loyal to Duke Michael.

**3- Why did Rudolf Rassendyll want to ride on his own بمفرده through the poor area منطقة of Strelsau?**

He wanted the people who lived there to see that their King trusted them يثق بهم.

**4- Why were the poor people in the old town happy to see the King (Rudolf Rassendyll)?**

They hadn't seen him before. They felt the he trusted them and cared about them.

**5- Why was Sapt so anxious قلق about Rassendyll's decision قرار to ride alone through the old town?**

He knew that the people in the old town supported the Duke and he was afraid that Rassendyll would be hurt بأذى or attacked يتم الهجوم عليه there.

**6- What was the poor people's reaction رد فعل when they saw Rudolf Rassendyll?**

Some of them were cheering يحيى and smiling but others were quiet and looked at him angrily.

**7- What made the king (Rudolf Rassendyll) think that Duke Michael was popular محبوب in the old town?**

Rassendyll saw many paintings of the Duke in their windows and he knew what they thought of him.

**8- What could Rudolf Rassendyll remember of the coronation later on?**

He could remember the golden crown تاج which was put on his head. He could also remember the promises وعود he was asked to read out and the beautiful music that played when someone announced أعلن that Rudolf the Fifth became King of Ruritania.

**9- Who was Princess Flavia?**

She was a royal ملكى cousin to Rudolf Elphberg and She was engaged to him.

**10- What was Duke Michael's reaction رد فعل when he saw Rudolf Rassendyll before the coronation?**

His face became white أصبح شاحب الوجه.

**11- Why did Duke Michael's face turn white أصبح شاحبا when he saw "the King" (Rassendyll)?**

He thought that the King was still in Zenda because he had poisoned him بسممه, so he was surprised to see the King there at the coronation.

**12- What did Rassendyll do after the coronation التتويج?**

He stood in the palace for an hour greeting many ambassadors يحيى and important people who came to see him. السفراء

**13- Why did Rudolf Rassendyll feel worried when he saw a man he knew from England?**

He felt worried because he didn't want anyone to recognize him يتعرف عليه.

**14- What did Princess Flavia think about Rudolf Rassendyll ride through the old town alone?**

She thought the people there must have appreciated what Rassendyll had done. يقدر

**15- According to Flavia, how did the King (Rudolf Rassendyll) look different on the day of coronation?**

She thought he looked more tired and serious. جاد

**16- Why was Fritz against the idea that the King (Rassendyll) should become popular with the poor people?**

Because Duke Michael wouldn't like it. محبوب من

**17- Why did Rassendyll and Sapt need a permit to leave the city?**

Michael controlled the city and he had had news from Zenda, so he wouldn't want people to leave the city. يسيطر على

**18- How did Rassendyll and Sapt get a permit from the King to leave the city?**

Sapt could write like the King and he signed the paper. وقع على

**19- What did Fritz do while Sapt and Rassendyll went to Zenda?**

He stayed and guarded the bedroom. He must not let anyone inside the room. كان يحرس

**20- How did Sapt and Rassendyll get out of the palace?**

They went through a secret passage in the wall and out of a secret back door. ممر سرى

**21- What did Rudolf Rassendyll do so as not to be recognized while he was going with Sapt to bring the King back?**

His coat and hat covered his face and hair and he tried to stay low on the horse.

**22- What did Colonel Sapt do to persuade the guard's daughter at the gate to give him the key?**

He gave her a form from the King to give to her father and gave her a coin. وثيقة

**23- Why was nearly everyone in Strelsau in the streets?**

Everyone in Strelsau was in the streets to celebrate the coronation.  
التتويج.

**24- Why could Sapt and Rassendyll hear the people coming behind them?**

Because the wind was blowing towards them.

**25- Why did Colonel Sapt get off his horse and put his ear to the ground?**

He wanted to make sure if there was anyone coming behind them.

**26- Who else was riding to Zenda other than Sapt and Rassendyll?**

Duke Michael and his servant Max Holf were riding to Zenda.

**27- Why didn't Colonel Sapt shoot Duke Michael when he saw him in the forest with Max Holf?**

He realized that it wouldn't have helped the King at that moment.

**28- What do you think the message "all is well" means?**

It means that the King was kidnapped from the hunting lodge and locked in the castle of Zenda.

**29- What did Sapt and Rudolf find when they reached the hunting lodge?**

They found that it was dark and quiet and no one came out to meet them. The King was kidnapped and Josef was killed.

**30- Who kidnapped King Rudolf the Fifth? Why?**

Duke Michael kidnapped him because he wanted to take the crown and be the king.

**31- Why does Rudolf Rassendyll suggest collecting every soldier in Strelsau?**

To catch Duke Michael before he kills the King.

**32- Why didn't Rudolf Rassendyll leave Ruritania on the same day of the coronation as planned?**

Because the King had been kidnapped by Duke Michael's men, so Rudolf Rassendyll agreed to go back to Strelsau and continue to pretend to be the King so that Michael wouldn't take the crown.

**33- What did Sapt ask Rassendyll to do after they discovered that the King had been kidnapped?**

He asked him to continue to pretend to be the King as he had another plan to save the King.

# Quotations

## 1- Why have we changed our route طريق؟

### 1- Who said this to whom?

- Rudolf Rassendyll said this to Marshal Strakencz.

### 2- Where were they going at that time?

- They were going to the palace القصر.

### 3- What was the addressed person's answer?

- He said it was better that way.

## 2- 'Don't you understand me? Tell your soldiers to go!'

### 1- Who said this to whom?

- The king (Rudolf Rassendyll) said this to Marshal Strakencz.

### 2- Why did the speaker want to ride alone?

- He wanted to go through the old town alone بمفرده to show يبين the people that he trusted them يثق بهم.

### 3- Why was the addressed person reluctant متردد to carry out تنفيذ the order?

- Marshal Strakencz did not want the king (Rassendyll) to ride alone through the old town because people there supported يؤيد Duke Michael and he could be killed there.

## 3- 'Look, I can pretend to be the King because I look like him. That doesn't mean I can write like him too!'

### 1- Who said this to whom?

- Rudolf Rassendyll said this to Colonel Sapt.

### 2- Where and when was this said?

- This was said in the royal palace قصر ملكي when Rudolf Rassendyll and Colonel Sapt were getting ready to go to the hunting lodge البيت الريفي to get the king back.

### 3- What was the speaker asked to write?

- He was asked to write the king's name on a form so that he could leave the city.

## 4- 'Michael may try to visit, but you mustn't let him in even if your life depends on it.'

### 1- Who said this to whom?

- Colonel Sapt said this to Fritz von Tarlenheim.

### 2- What was the addressed person asked to do?

- He was asked to guard يحرس the king's bedroom in the royal palace and stop anyone trying to get in يدخل even if لو it were the Duke himself. Meanwhile في أثناء ذلك, Sapt and Rassendyll would go and bring back the King from the hunting lodge .

### 3- What does the phrase 'even if your life depends on it' mean?

- It means that Fritz mustn't allow يسمح anyone to enter the king's bedroom even if he has to die for it.

## 5- 'My father is not here, I'm afraid. He's gone to see the King.'

### 1- Who said this to whom?

- The little girl whose father guarded يحرس the city gate بوابة said this to Colonel Sapt.

### 2- What was the duty of the person's father?

- It was to prevent يمنع anyone from going through the gate without the King's permit تصريح.

### 3- Where was the addressed person going?

- He was going to the hunting lodge with Rudolf Rassendyll.

## 6- 'But he told me not to open the gate for anyone.'

### 1- Who said this to whom?

- The little girl whose father guarded يحرس the city gate بوابة said this to Colonel Sapt.

**2- Who told the speaker not to open the gate for anyone?**

- Her father, the guard of the city gate.

**3- Why did the addressed person want the gate to be opened?**

- He and Rudolf Rassendyll were going to the hunting lodge to bring back the King.

**7- "I think we should go to the castle where we can learn the truth."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Max Holt said this to Duke Michael.

**2- Which truth was the speaker talking about?**

- It was the truth about the King who was kidnapped **تم اختطافه** from the hunting lodge by the Duke's men.

**3- What was the addressed person planning to do?**

- Perhaps he was planning to kill the King or put him in prison **يضعه في السجن** and take the crown **التاج**.

**8- "If all's well, why go there? And if all isn't well I fear ليس على ما يرام, I fear يخاف there'll be a trap مصيدة."**

**1- Who says this to whom?**

- Max Holt says this to Duke Michael.

**2- Where are they?**

- They are on the road between Strelsau and Zenda or on the way to Zenda.

**3- What is "there"? What do you think he means **يعني** by "all's well"?**

- "There" means the hunting lodge. "All's well" probably **ربما** means that the Duke's plan has gone ahead **تم تقديم موعدها** and that the King is kidnapped.

**9- "Look there! That's what I used to tie up the old woman. Fasten **يربط** the horses and let's see what's happened."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Colonel Sapt said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- Who was the old woman and what did she do?**

- The old woman was Johann's mother. She overheard **يتنصت على** Sapt's plan to prevent **تمنع** Duke Michael from taking the crown **التاج**.

**3- What did the speaker use to tie up **يربط** the old woman?**

- He used some dirty handkerchiefs **مناديل قذرة**.

**10- "We'll go back to Strelsau. The King will be back in the capital again tomorrow!"**

**1- Who says this to whom?**

- Sapt says this to Rassendyll.

**2- Where are they and what has happened?**

- They are in the hunting lodge near Zenda. They have found Josef dead and the King is gone **اختفى**.

**3- How will the King be back in the capital tomorrow?**

- Rassendyll will continue to pretend **يتظاهر** to be the King. Sapt wants Rassendyll to continue to pretend to be the King.

**Find the mistake in each sentence and correct it**

- 1- ☒ Dressed **متنكرا** as king of **England**, Rassendyll rode on through the streets of Strelsau towards **نحو** the palace.

- ☒ Dressed as king of **Ruritania**, Rassendyll rode on through the streets of Strelsau towards the palace.

- 2- ☒ Rassendyll expected **يتوقع** **Flavia** to call out **تصيح** and tell everybody that he was not the real King.



- ☑ Rassendyll expected **Antoinette de Mauban** to call out and tell everybody that he was not the real King.
- 3- ☑ People in the poor part of the town were **disloyal** غير أوفياء to Duke Michael.  
☑ People in the poor part of the town were **loyal** to Duke Michael.
- 4- ☑ It is **Marshal Strakencz's** idea for the King to ride through the old part of town alone.  
☑ It is **the King's (Rassendyll)** idea to ride through the old part of town alone.
- 5- ☑ People in the part of the town supported **أيدوا the king**.  
☑ People in the poor part of the town supported **Duke Michael**.
- 6- ☑ Princess **Amelia** said that Rudolf looked different but she thought he was the real King.  
☑ Princess **Flavia** said that Rudolf looked **كان يبدو** different but she thought he was the real King.
- 7- ☑ Fritz thinks it **was** a good idea for Rassendyll "the King" to become popular with the people.  
☑ Fritz thinks it **was not** a good idea for Rassendyll "the King" to become popular with the people.
- 8- ☑ People were **angry** to see the king (Rassendyll) on his own بمفرده.  
☑ People were **surprised** to see the king (Rassendyll) on his own.
- 9- ☑ Some people smiled **ابتسموا** and cheered **حيوا** but others looked at **the Marshal** angrily بغضب.  
☑ Some people smiled and cheered but others looked at **Rassendyll** angrily.
- 10- ☑ Rassendyll rode in a **horse** with Princess Flavia.  
☑ Rassendyll rode in a **coach** with Princess Flavia.
- 11- ☑ **Lord Topham** that Rassendyll was not the real King.  
☑ **Duke Michael** knew that Rassendyll was not the real King.
- 12- ☑ **Josef** rode with Duke Michael from Strelsau.  
☑ **Max Holf** rode with Duke Michael from Strelsau.
- 13- ☑ Princess Flavia was a beautiful young woman with **black** hair.  
☑ Princess Flavia was a beautiful young woman with **red** hair.
- 14- ☑ Duke Michael's hands shook اهتزت with anger بغضب when he greeted **حيا the Marshal**.  
☑ Duke Michael's hands shook with anger when he greeted **Rudolf Rassendyll**.
- 15- ☑ Rassendyll was **happy** when he saw Lord Topham from England.  
☑ Rassendyll was **worried** when he saw Lord Topham from England.
- 16- Lord Topham' eyes were too **sharp** to recognize Rassendyll.  
Lord Topham' eyes were too **poor** to recognize Rassendyll.
- 17- Duke Michael wouldn't like it if **Sapt** became popular with his people.  
Duke Michael wouldn't like it if **the King** became popular with his people.
- 18- ☑ Rassendyll couldn't leave the city without a permit from **the duke**.  
☑ Rassendyll couldn't leave the city without a permit from **the King**.
- 19- ☑ Sapt told Fritz not to let **Rassendyll** into the King's bedroom.  
☑ Sapt told Fritz not to let **Michael** into the King's bedroom.
- 20- ☑ Sapt and Rassendyll went out of the palace through a secret **window**.  
☑ Sapt and Rassendyll went out of the palace through a secret **door**.
- 21- ☑ Sapt gave the guard's daughter a **frame** from the King and a coin.  
☑ Sapt gave the guard's daughter a **form** from the King and a coin.
- 22- ☑ Sapt and Rassendyll went to **the palace** to bring back the King.  
☑ Sapt and Rassendyll went to **the hunting lodge** to bring back the King.
- 23- ☑ Max Holf was brother to **Josef** who Rassendyll had seen at the inn.  
☑ Max Holf was brother to **Johann** who Rassendyll had seen at the inn.
- 24- ☑ Sapt found torn and dirty **shirts** on the ground.  
☑ Sapt found torn and dirty **handkerchiefs** on the ground.

## Homework ((A ))

### A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- What did Rassendyll expect Antoinette to do ?
- 2- What did the Marshall order his men to do?
- 3- Give two reasons for Rassendyll's insistence to ride alone in the old part
- 4- How did the people have different feelings when they saw Rassendyll ?
- 5- How far was the Duke popular with the poor people?
- 6- People in the old part supported Duke Michael. **Give reasons.**
- 7- Why were people in the new part of the town pro-the king مؤيدين للملك?
- 8- What was Sapt's feeling while the king was riding through the Old part?
- 9- Who did Rassendyll see inside the beautiful coronation building?
- 10- What important things could Rassendyll remember well during the coronation?
- 11- How did Duke Michael feel when he saw Rassendyll (the pretend King)?
- 12- When did Rassendyll become worried at the coronation?
- 13- Why couldn't **Lord Topham** recognize Rassendyll?
- 14- Show the princess was a good observant.
- 15- Both the princess and Fritz had different opinions about what Rassendyll did in the Old part of the town . Discuss
- 16- Why did Sapt want Rassendyll to leave Ruritania as soon as he could ?
- 17- How did Rassendyll get the King's permit to leave the city that night?
- 18- What part would Fritz play to hide Rassendyll's leaving the palace at night?
- 19- How did Sapt and Rassebdyll leave the palace secretly after the coronation?
- 20- Why did Sapt ask Rassendyll to take his gun?
- 21- Where were Sapt and Rassendyll heading for soon after the coronation? why?
- 22- What did Rassendyll do so as not to be recognized in the street?

### B) Read the following quotation and answer the questions:

1- **" Don't you understand me ? Tell your soldier to go! "**

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) What did the speaker want to do?
- c) What was the effect of that on people there ?

2- **"When's the wedding? "**

- a) Who asked this question?
- b) According to Rassendyll, who could answer that question?
- c) Why couldn't Rassendyll answer that question ?

3- **"Why have we changed our route? "**

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) Where were they going at that time ?
- c) What was the addressed person's answer?

4- **" I think I want to change now that I'm king "**

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) Which change did the listener notice?
- c) Where were they ?

**5- " I want the people who live here to see that their king trusts them. "**

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) What does " here' refer to ?
- c) What was wrong with that place?

**C) Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:**

- 1- People of the old town wanted Rassendyll to be their king.
- 2- Rassendyll was a man with dark hair and dark deep eyes.
- 3- Michael was surprised and deeply happy to see Rassendyll.
- 4- During the wedding, Rassendyll did all the right things.
- 5- Princess Flavia noticed that Rassendyll looked similar as he was more serious.
- 6- The Duke of Strelsau was the king's cousin.
- 7- Sapt was happy when the king rode through the streets of the old part.
- 8- The king rode with soldiers through the streets of the old part.
- 9- The Marshal didn't like the king to be popular with people.
- 10- Rassendyll was wearing a big coat and hat to cover his black hair.
- 11- Sapt and Rassendyll left the palace through a tunnel in the wall.
- 12- Some people smiled and cheered the king , others looked happily at him.
- 13- On seeing Rassendyll at the coronation, Michael's face turned red.

**Homework ((B))**

**A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Why did Sapt and Rassendyll have to leave Strelsau for Zenda ?
- 2- Why did the girl at the city gate refused to open the gate at first?
- 3- How did Rassendyll and Sapt leave the king's room?
- 4- Why did Sapt get off the horse and put his ears to the ground?
- 5- What did Sapt order Rassendyll at the fork?
- 6- Where did the Duke and Max ride to?
- 7- Why didn't Max prefer going to the hunting lodge?
- 8- At the fork, Sapt would love to shoot Duke Michael but he didn't, say why.
- 9- Sapt and Rassendyll were surprised on reaching the hunting lodge. Discuss
- 10- Why did Rassendyll ask Sapt to stay and went inside the cellar with a candle?
- 11- How did Josef meet his end? What happened to the king?
- 12- Why did Rassendyll want to go back to the capital ?
- 13- What did Sapt realize when he saw the torn handkerchiefs?
- 14- What was Sapt's plan after the disappearance of the king?

**B) Read the following quotation and answer the questions:**

**1- "My father isn't here. I'm afraid . He's gone to see the king."**

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) What was the duty of the speaker's father?
- c) Where was the addressed person going ?

**2- " Get off ? But they'll catch us "**

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) What does " **they**" refer to?

c)Where were they ?

**3- "I realized that when I saw the handkerchiefs. "**

- a)Who said these words to whom?
- b)What did the speaker realize?
- c)What were the handkerchiefs used for ?

**4-"Michael must've known all day. "**

- a)Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b)What was Michael's source of information?
- c) What was the occasion?

**5- " We're lucky that the wind is blowing towards us. "**

- a)Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b)Why were they lucky that the wind was blowing towards them?
- c)Where were they going ? and Why?

**6-"So, he's had news that all is well. "**

- a)Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b)What does " **he** " refer to?
- c)What news might he have?

**7-"If all's well , why go there? And if all isn't well, I fear there'll be a trap "**

- a)Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) Where were they ?
- c)What does " **there**" refer to?

**C) Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:**

- 1- To leave the city, one should have a form signed by the duke.
- 2- The girl told Sapt that her father went to see the Duke.
- 3- Sapt said that there were four people coming behind them.
- 4- Duke Michael and Max Holf rode to the lodge.
- 5- The old woman was no longer in the room, she had died.
- 6- Fritz was found dead on the floor of the cellar.
- 7- If Rassendyll agreed to go back to Strelsau, the king would be killed.
- 8- When he saw the torn scarf, Sapt knew that the old woman disappeared.
- 9- Sapt wouldn't kill the king as long as Rassendyll was in the palace.
- 10- One had to get a permit to leave Zenda.

## Chapter 4

Mad	مجنون	hold ... prisoner	يحبس
Shoulder	كتف	Duties	واجبات
Protest	يحتج	documents	وثائق / مستندات
Guilt	ذنب / جرم	Accuse	يتهم
Doubts	شكوك	Kidnap	يخطف
Surely	بالتأكيد	in public	علانية
Risk	خطر / مجازفة	stalemate	مأزق / طريق مسدود / ورطة
Within	في خلال	nervously	بقلق وخوف
Act	يتصرف	Distant	بعيد
Moonlight	ضوء القمر	attract attention	يجذب انتباه
Spade	جاروف	guest room	حجرة الضيوف
Hide / hid / hidden	يختبئ	Mirror	مرآة
evil work	عمل شرير	push off his horse	يدفع من على الحصان
Look shocked	يبدو مصدوم	Admit	يعترف
knock off a horse	يُسقط من الحصان	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
be trapped	يتم الإيقاع به / يحتجز	Assure	يؤكد
Gap	فجوة / ثغرة	Steps	خطوات
a terrible pain	ألم فظيع	permission	إذن
Hurt badly	يؤلم بشدة	Rules	قواعد
catch up with	يلحق بـ	otherwise	و إلا
Breathless	لاهث	bite/bit/bitten	يعض
Bandage	ضمادة	Splendid	رائع
head off	يذهب / ينطلق	Bow	ينحني
Foreigners	أجانب	Fighter	محارب
Trust	ثقة / يثق	poisonous	سام
Serious	خطير	Accent	لهجة

### The Text

**1-**It had not been easy to escape from Strelsau and return to the hunting lodge without anyone seeing us, so when Sapt suggested that I return to the capital and continue pretending to be the King, I let him know exactly what I thought.

**"You're mad!"** I said to Sapt. **"The plan's too dangerous!"**

Walking up to me, Sapt put his hand on my shoulder and then looked deep into my eyes.

**"Listen, if you're a man, you can save the King. Go back and pretend to be him."**

**"But the Duke knows where the real King is, and all his men know!"** I protested.

**"Yes, but they can't say anything,"** said Sapt. **"Listen! We've got them! They can't say anything without showing their guilt. They cannot**

**say, 'This isn't the real King because we've kidnapped him and killed his servant.' Will they say that?'**

I realised that Sapt was right

لم يكن من السهل الهروب من سترلسو والعودة إلى كوخ الصيد دون أن يرانا أحد ، لذلك عندما اقترح العقيد سابت أن أعود إلى العاصمة واستمر في القيام بدور الملك ، أردت أن أجعله يعلم ما يدور بخلدني. فقلت له "أنت مجنون!". "الخطة خطيرة جدا!" فاقترحت مني ووضع يده على كتفي ثم نظر بعمق في عيني وقال لي "اسمع أيها الرجل انه بإمكانك إنقاذ الملك" "عد إلى العاصمة واستمر في القيام بدور الملك" فقلت له محتجا على هذا الاقتراح "لكن الدوق ورجاله يعلمون أين الملك الحقيقي،!" فقال لي "نعم، لكنهم لا يستطيعون قول أي شيء". ثم أضاف "أنصت إلي! لقد علمنا خطنهم! إنهم لا يستطيعون قول أي شيء دون أن يظهر جريمتهم ، فهم لا يمكن أن يقولوا "هذا ليس الملك الحقيقي لأننا خطفناه وقتلنا خادمه" هل ممكن أن يقولوا ذلك؟ " أدركت أن العقيد سابت كان محقا.

2-Even if Michael knew who I was, he could not say he knew, but I still had doubts.

**"Sapt, surely someone in Strelsau will realise I'm not the real King," I said. "The Princess has already said she thinks the King's changed. She'll certainly realise."**

**"Of course it's a risk, but we must have a King in Strelsau, or the city will belong to Michael within twenty-four hours. You must do it, for Ruritania!"**

**"What if the King's already dead?"**

**"If the real King's already dead, then you shall stay King! But I think the King's still alive, and I don't think they'll do anything to him if you're in the capital. They'd know that you would stay King if they killed him!"**

فحتى لو علم مايكل من أنا ، فانه لن يستطيع الإفصاح بذلك، لكن كان لا يزال لدي بعض الشكوك. فقلت للعقيد سابت: "بالتأكيد سوف يوجد شخص في سترلسو يدرك أنني لست الملك الحقيقي" وتابعت حديثي قائلا " إن الأميرة قالت أنها تعتقد أن الملك قد تغير بالفعل. ومن ثم فإنها سوف تعرف حقيقتي." فقال لي "بالطبع إنها مجازفة، ولكننا يجب أن يكون لدينا ملك في سترلسو، وإلا ستنتقل مقاليد الحكم في المدينة إلى الدوق مايكل في غضون أربع وعشرين ساعة. لذا يجب عليك أن تفعل ذلك من أجل روريتانيا!" فقلت له "ماذا لو كان الملك الحقيقي قد مات بالفعل؟" فقال لي: "إذا كان الملك الحقيقي قد مات بالفعل، يجب عليك الاستمرار في دور الملك! ولكنني أعتقد أن الملك ما زال على قيد الحياة، وأنا لا أعتقد أنهم سوف يفعلون أي شيء له مادمت أنت في العاصمة، فهم يعلمون أنك ستظل الملك إذا قتلوا الملك الحقيقي!"

3-It was a mad plan, even madder than the first plan, which had been a success, but as I listened to Sapt, I saw that it could work.

**"I still worry that someone will realise," I said again.**

**"Anything is possible, but come, Rassendyll! Let's go to Strelsau. We'll be caught if we stay here."**

**"All right, Sapt, I'll try," I said.**

**"Good man!" said Sapt. "I'll go and get the horses."**

But seconds later, he came back. **"Look out of the window."**

Through the window I could see in the moonlight a big group of men coming down the road from Zenda: four were on horses, another four or five were walking. I knew they must be Michael's men, and they seemed to be carrying spades, coming to the house to hide their evil work.

I remembered poor Josef's body and said, **"Sapt, we should make sure that some of those evil men join Josef."**

**"Very well," said Sapt. "As a soldier, I've had a lot of fights like this. I'll show you what to do."**

لقد كانت خطة خطيرة، بل وأكثر خطورة من الخطة الأولى، التي كانت ناجحة بالفعل، ولكن عندما استمعت إلى العقيد سابت، علمت أننا سننجح في ذلك. فقلت له مرة أخرى "أنا لا زلت قلقا أن شخصا ما سوف يدرك أنني لست الملك الحقيقي"، فقال لي "كل شيء ممكن، ولكن هيا بنا نذهب إلى سترلسو ياراسندل!". سوف يتم القبض علينا إذا بقينا هنا." فقلت له "حسنا، يا سابت، سأحاول"، فقال لي "أحسن يا رجل!" "سأذهب واحضر الخيول." ولكن بعد ثوان عاد العقيد سابت وقال لي. "انظروا من النافذة." رأيت من خلال النافذة في ضوء القمر مجموعة كبيرة من الرجال قادمة على الطريق من زندا: أربعة منهم كانوا على الخيول، وأربعة أو خمسة كانوا يمشون. كنت أعرف أنهم من رجال الدوق مايكل، ويبدو أنهم كانوا يحملون معدات الحفر، متجهون إلى المنزل لإخفاء معالم جريمتهم. تذكرت حينئذ جثمان جوزيف المسكين ، وقلت لسابت "علينا التأكد من أن بعض

هؤلاء الرجال الأشرار لحقوا بجوزيف". فقال لي "حسنًا وأنا بصفتي العسكرية ، قد مر بي الكثير من هذه المواقف، وسوف أبين لك ما يجب القيام به."

4-We went out of a back door and climbed onto our horses with our swords ready. We could hear the men arrive at the front of the hunting lodge, and one called out, **"Go and get the body."**

**"Now!"** cried Sapt, and we drove our horses fast to the front of the building. The men looked shocked to see us and were not prepared. I easily knocked one man off his horse, then hit another big man with my sword as he moved towards me. But there were only two of us and within seconds I realised there were people all around me. Just as I was about to be trapped, I saw a gap between the men and saw my chance to escape. I turned my horse and quickly rode through the gap towards the forest. My horse was fast but as I left, I heard a gun and I was almost shot. I could see Sapt on his horse ahead of me, and went as quickly as I could towards him, waving. Then I heard another shot and felt a terrible pain in my finger. Someone shot again, but now we were too far away for them to hit us. At last I caught up with Sapt, who was breathless but laughing.



**"Well done!"** he said. **"That was very brave. Do you think: they saw who you were?"**

**"Yes, one of the men said 'It's the King' before I pushed him off his horse."**

**"Good!"** said Sapt. **"That will give Michael something to worry about."**  
خرجنا من الباب الخلفي وركبنا خيولنا وسيوفنا جاهزة. وسمعنا صوت الرجال عندما وصلوا إلى مقدمة مبنى كوخ الصيد فنادي ادهم قاتلا "أذهبوا واحضروا الجثمان." حينئذ صاح العقيد سابت قاتلا "الآن" وانطلقنا بالخيول سريعا. وصدم الرجل لرؤيتنا فلم يتوقعوا مقابلة احد. اسقطت ادهم بسهولة من على جواده وضربت رجلا ضخما آخر بسيفي عندما اتجه نحوي. لكننا كنا اثنين فقط وفي غضون ثوان احاطوني. وقبل أن يمسكوا بي استطعت أن اهرب من بينهم نحو الغابة. وكان حصاني سريع ولكن عندما غادرت، سمعت طلقة ناري كاد أن يصيبني. كنت أرى العقيد سابت على حصانه أمامي، وذهبت بأسرع ما يمكن نحوه ملوحا بيدي. ثم سمعت طلقة أخرى وشعرت بألم فظيع في إصبعي. وأطلق ادهم النار للمرة الثالثة، ولكننا الآن كنا بعيدا جدا. أخيرا التحقت بالعقيد سابت، الذي كان يضحك وهو يلتقط أنفاسه. فقال لي "أحسننت صنعا!" وأضاف متسانلا "هل تعتقد: أنهم تعرفوا عليك؟" فقلت له "نعم لقد تعرفوا علي فقد سمعت ادهم يقول: "انه الملك" وذلك قبل أن أسقطه من على جواده" فقال "حسنًا!". "هذا سيجعل مايكل قلقا."

5-After a time, we stopped so that Sapt could put a bandage on my finger, which now hurt badly. We moved on in silence, as quickly as our poor horses were able to, until we arrived at a farm just as the sun was rising on a cold, clear day. I covered my face, saying to the farmer that I had a bad tooth before we asked for food.

The farmer was kind and let us rest, but we knew we could not wait for long and soon headed off. Some hours later, we saw the buildings of



Strelsau ahead of us. It was about nine o'clock and at this time of day, the city gates were open, so we went back through the gate that we had left from.

وبعد مرور بعض الوقت، توقفنا لكي يضمّد سابت إصبعي الذي كان يؤلمني بشدة. وسرنا في صمت، سريعا بقدر طاقة خيولنا المنهكة من شدة التعب، حتى وصلنا إلى مزرعة مع شروق الشمس. غطيت وجهي، وقلت للمزارع أن أسألي توّلمني قيل أن نطلب الطعام. كان المزارع طيبا وتركنا نستريح، ولكننا كنا نعلم أننا لا يمكن أن تنتظر لفترة طويلة وانطلقنا سريعا. وبعد بضع ساعات، رأينا مباني العاصمة سترلسو أمامنا. كانت الساعة حوالي التاسعة صباحا، وكانت أبواب المدينة مفتوحة، فذهبنا إلى البوابة الخلفية التي كنا قد غادرنا منها.

6-The streets of the city were very quiet, as most of the people were resting after the celebrations, and we saw almost no one until we were back at the palace. Here, one of Sapt's servants was waiting for us.

**"Is all well, sir?"** he asked.

**"Yes, Freyler, all is well,"** answered Sapt.

**"But the King's hurt?"** he said, seeing my finger.

**"It's nothing,"** I said.

**"He caught his finger in a door,"** Sapt explained. **"Now remember, say nothing about this. All young men like to ride their horses now and then, so why not the King?"**

كانت شوارع المدينة هادئة جدا، لأن معظم الناس كانوا يستريحون بعد الاحتفالات، وتقريبا لم نر أحدا حتى دخلنا القصر. و هنا كان احد رجال العقيد سابت في انتظارنا. فسأل العقيد سابت قائلا "هل كل شيء على ما يرام، يا سيدي؟" فأجابته سابت قائلا "نعم يا فريزر، كل شيء على ما يرام". فتسأل فريزر عند رؤية إصبعي قائلا "لكن الملك مصاب؟" فقلت له "إنه شيء بسيط". فقال له سابت موضحا "لقد قفل الباب على إصبعه وذكره ألا يخبر أحدا عما رأي جميع الشبان ترغب في ركوب خيولهم بين الحين والآخر، فلماذا لا يفعل الملك ذلك؟!"

7-As the servant led our horses away, Sapt said quietly to me, **"Freyler's a good servant, but sometimes it's best not to trust even the best of men."**

Sapt put the key in the secret door and we went back inside the palace, down the passage to the King's room. Back inside, Fritz, who had been asleep, jumped up when he heard us and cried, **"My King, you're safe! I'm so pleased."** He then bowed down in front of me.

**"Even Fritz thinks you're the real King!"** laughed Sapt. **"I think we can do this."**

**"Oh! Rassendyll?"** said Fritz in surprise. **"But what's happened to your hand? Are you hurt?"**

**"It's nothing serious. What's more important is what we have to tell you."**

**"What is it? Where's the real King?"** he cried.

**"Be quiet, Fritz!"** said Sapt. **"Don't speak so loudly! People will hear us."**

Suddenly there was a knock at the door, so Sapt took me by the arm.

**"Quick! Go into the bedroom, take your hat and boots off and climb into bed. Cover yourself up so people think you're asleep."**

ولما ذهب فريزر بالخيول قال لي سابت بهدوء "فريزر خادم جيد، ولكن في بعض الأحيان من الأفضل عدم الثقة حتى في أفضل الرجال." وضع سابت المفتاح في الباب السري ودخلنا القصر، من خلال الممر إلى غرفة الملك. وعندما سمعنا فريزر الذي كان نائما قفز، وصاح قائلا "سيدي إنني سعيد لسلامتك وانحنى أمامي." ضحك سابت قائلا: "حتى فريزر يعتقد أنك الملك الحقيقي!" وأضاف قائلا "أعتقد أننا يمكن أن ننجح في مهمتنا." فقال فريزر مندهشا "أوه! يا راسندل؟" وأضاف متسائلا "لكن ماذا حدث لك؟ هل أنت مصاب؟" فقلت له "إنه شيء بسيط ولكن الأكثر أهمية هو ما يجب أن نقوله لك." فصاح متسائلا "ما هو؟ أين الملك الحقيقي؟" فقال له سابت "كن هادئا، يا فريزر! لا تتحدث بصوت عال! الناس قد تسمعنا." وفجأة كان هناك طرق على الباب، فأخذني سابت من ذراعي وقال لي. "بسرعة! اذهب إلى غرفة النوم، واخلع نعليك وقبعتك وغطي نفسك جيدا حتى يظن الناس أنك نائم"

8-I did as I was told, but a minute later Sapt came into the bedroom and smiled. He introduced me to a polite young gentleman who came up to my

bed and told me that he was a servant of Princess Flavia, who had sent him to find out how the King was feeling after the coronation.

**"Send her my thanks," I said, "and tell her that I've never felt better in my life."**

**"The King's had a good long sleep,"** said Sapt.

The servant bowed and left, and I smiled at Sapt. But Fritz still looked very serious.

فعلت كما قيل لي، ولكن بعد دقيقة واحدة جاء سابت إلى غرفة النوم مبتسما. وقدم لي رجل شاب مهذب جاء إلى سريري وقال لي أنه خادم الأميرة فلافيا، أرسلته الأميرة لمعرفة كيف كان شعور الملك بعد التتويج. فقلت له "بلغها تحياتي، واخبرها أنني في أتم صحة وحال" وقال له العقيد سابت: "إن الملك قد نام نوما عميقا ليلة أمس". انحنى الخادم وانصرف، ابتسمت للعقيد سابت. ولكن فريتز مازال جادا جدا.

9-**"Tell me, is the King dead?"** he asked quietly.

**"We don't think so,"** I answered. **"But Duke Michael's holding him prisoner."**

The next day, it took Sapt three hours to tell me all about the King's duties. It seems that a king's life is quite hard, but a pretend king's life is even harder. At least Sapt stayed with me to tell me what I ought to do and what I ought not to do, and what I should say to the many important people I had to meet during the day. I was worried when I met the French ambassador and he asked me a question which I could not answer, but later Sapt told me that I should not worry, as the real King would not have been able to answer either. I also had to tell everyone that I could not write because of my finger, so many important documents were not completed.

وتساءل بهدوء: "قولوا لي، هل مات الملك؟". فأجبت قائلا "نحن لا نعتقد ذلك". وأضافت "لكن الدوق مايكل يحتجزه كسجين." وفي اليوم التالي، ظل العقيد سابت قرابة ثلاث ساعات يخبرني بكل شيء عن واجبات الملك. وبدا لي أن حياة الملوك صعبة جدا، ولكن تقليدهم أكثر صعوبة. وعلى أية حال وقف العقيد ثابت بجوارتي ليرشدني إلى ما يجب علي أن أفعله وما لا يجب علي أن أفعله. كذلك ما ينبغي علي أن أقوله للشخصيات المهمة التي أقابلها على مدار اليوم. وكنت قلقا ذات يوم عندما التقيت بالسفير الفرنسي وسألني سؤال لم أستطع الإجابة عليه، ولكن في وقت لاحق طمئنني سابت قائلا لا داعي للقلق فحتى الملك الحقيقي ليس لديه القدرة على الإجابة أيضا. وكان لزاما علي أن أخبر الجميع أنني لا يمكنني التوقيع على العديد من المستندات المهمة نظرا لإصابتي بإصبعي.

10-After many hours of meetings, I was finally alone with my friends once more. I asked a new servant, who had never met the real King, for a drink and then asked Sapt if I could rest at last. I was not used to such hard work.

**"Rest? No! We mustn't waste any time! Shouldn't we plan how to attack Michael?"** asked Fritz.

**"Let's take things slowly,"** said Sapt.

**"So aren't we going to do anything?"** said Fritz.

**"We aren't going to do anything dangerous,"** answered Sapt.

**"If people find out who I am,"** I said, **"then I'll fight with the Duke. But at the moment, let's wait to see what the Duke does."**

**"He'll kill the King,"** said Fritz.

**"He won't,"** said Sapt. **"If he kills the King, he knows that Rassendyll will stay as King instead. And he cannot accuse Rassendyll of anything because then people will know that he's kidnapped the King."**

**"And we cannot accuse him in public without admitting that I'm not the real King,"** I explained.

**"So no one can do anything! It's a stalemate!"** cried Fritz. **"But wait. Half of Michael's Six Men are in Strelsau with the Duke."**

**"Only half? Then that means the other half are guarding the King,"**

said Sapt.

**"Yes, you're right,"** said Fritz. **"So that means the King must be alive. If the King were dead, all the Six Men would be here with the Duke."**

وبعد عدة ساعات من الاجتماعات، أصبحت في نهاية المطاف وحدي مع أصدقائي مرة أخرى. طلبت من أحد الخدم الجدد والذي لم يلتق الملك الحقيقي قط، أن يحضر لي مشروباً ثم طلبت من العقيد سابت أن أسترخ قليلاً. فانا لم اعتد على مثل هذا العمل الشاق. فتساءل فريتز قائلاً "تستريح؟ لا! يجب علينا ألا ننضيع الوقت! ألا يجب علينا أن نخطط لكيفية مواجهة الدوق مايكل؟" فرد عليه سابت قائلاً "دعنا نترتب في الأمر". فقال له فريتز "لو تمهلنا فلن نفعل أي شيء؟" فقال له سابت. "نحن لن نفعل أي شيء خطير" فقلت له "إذا علم الناس حقيقتي حينئذ سنقاوم الدوق ولكن حالياً، دعونا ننتظر لنرى ماذا سيفعل دوق". فقال لي فريتز "أن الدوق مايكل سوف يقتل الملك" فقال له العقيد سابت "إن الدوق مايكل لن يقتل الملك لأنه يعلم أنه إذا فعل ذلك فسوف يظل راسندل يقوم بدور الملك ولن يمكنه اتهام راسندل بأي شيء لأن الناس سوف تعلم أنه قد خطف الملك الحقيقي" فقلت موضعاً "ونحن أيضاً لا يمكن أن ننتهمه بأي شيء علناً دون الاعتراف بأنني لست الملك الحقيقي". فصاح فريتز قائلاً "لذا لا يمكن لكلانا أن يفعل أي شيء! إنه مأزق! وأضاف قائلاً مهلاً يا سادة نصف رجال مايكل الستة في العاصمة سترلسو مع الدوق مايكل". فقال العقيد سابت "النصف فقط؟ فهذا يعني أن النصف الآخر يحرس الملك" فقال له فريتز "نعم، أنت على حق، وهذا يعني أن الملك لابد أن يكون حياً. فلو كان الملك قد مات، لكان الرجال الستة هنا مع الدوق."

11- **"Excuse me, but who are the Six Men?"** I asked.

**"Unfortunately I fear you'll soon be meeting them,"** said Fritz. **"They're six special soldiers who Michael keeps in his house at all times. They're completely loyal to him. Three are from Ruritania, one is Belgian, one French, and one's from your country."**

**"They'll do whatever Michael asks them to do,"** continued Sapt.

**"Would they try to kill me?"** I asked nervously.

**"Without a doubt. Which three are here in Strelsau, Fritz?"** asked Sapt.

**"The three foreigners: De Gautet, Bersonin and Detchard."**

**"So they were not the men we saw at the hunting lodge?"** I asked.

**"I wish they were,"** said Sapt, **"because then there'd only be four and not six of them."**

فقلت لهما متسانلاً "عفوا، ولكن من هم الرجال الستة؟" فقال لي فريتز "لسوء الحظ أخشى أنك ستقابلهم قريباً"، وأضاف قائلاً "إنهم ستة من الحرس الخاص بالدوق مايكل وهو يحتفظ بهم دائماً في منزله وهم موالون له تماماً. ثلاثة منهم من دولة روريتانيا، وواحد بلجيكي، وآخر فرنسي والثالث من بلادك". وواصل الحديث العقيد سابت قائلاً "إنهم يفعلون كل ما يطلبه منهم الدوق مايكل" فتساءلت بعصبية: "هل سيحاولون قتلتي؟" فأجاب العقيد سابت قائلاً: "بدون شك". وسأل سابت فريتز قائلاً "من هم الثلاثة الموجودون الآن بالعاصمة سترلسو؟" فأجابه فريتز قائلاً "الأجانب الثلاثة: وهم (دي جانت) و(برسون) و(ديتشارد)". فسألت العقيد سابت قائلاً "إذا إنهم ليسوا الرجال الذين شاهدناهم في كوخ الصيد؟" فأجابني سابت قائلاً: "أتمنى لو كانوا هم لأنه في هذه الحالة سيكون هناك أربعة منهم وليس ستة."

12-I now decided that I should act – perhaps like all real kings do – by keeping some secrets even from the people I could trust the most. My plan was to make myself as popular as I could, and say nothing bad about Michael. In this way, I could hope to stop the poorer people of Strelsau from thinking badly about me. Then, if there were a fight, perhaps people would not want to follow Michael, although of course I hoped there would not be such a fight. Perhaps I could actually enjoy my game in Strelsau and something good would come from it. Michael would not grow stronger while the game lasted.

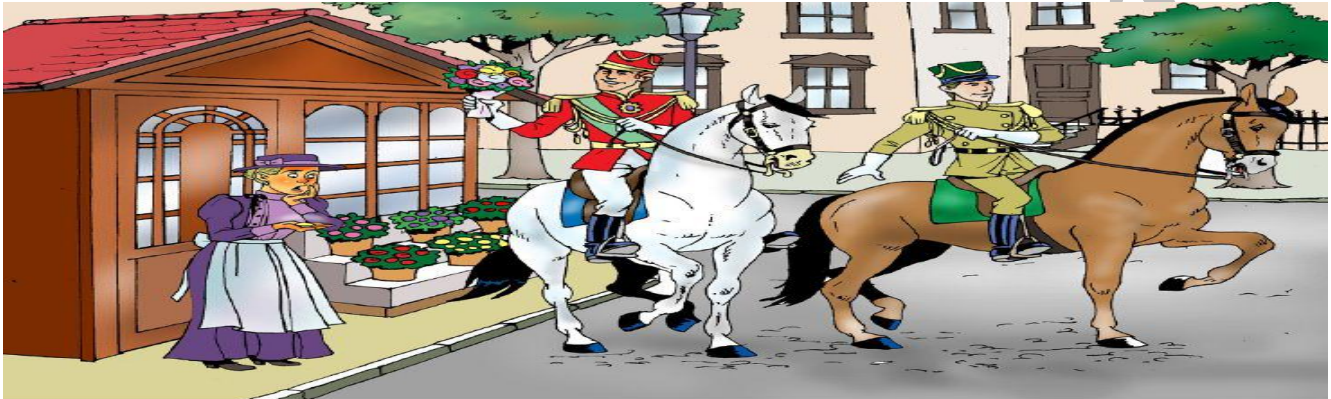
قررت حينئذ أن أتصرف - ربما مثل كل الملوك الحقيقيين - وذلك عن طريق الاحتفاظ ببعض الأسرار حتى عن الناس الذين أتق بهم كثيراً. وكانت خطتي أن أجعل نفسي شعبية وقبولاً لدى شعبي قدر الإمكان، وألا أتحدث بسوء عن أخي الدوق مايكل. وبهذه الطريقة، يمكن أن نأمل في منع الفقراء الموجودون بالعاصمة من سوء الظن بي. ومن ثم، إذا كان هناك قتال، ربما يمتنع هؤلاء الناس عن الانضمام لمايكل، على الرغم بالطبع أنني كنت أمل ألا يكون هناك صداماً. وربما بدأت فعلاً أستمتع بما أقوم به في سترلسو، وأنه قد يأتي شيء جيداً منه. كما أن مايكل لن يصبح أقوى إذا إستمررت في القيام بدور الملك.

13-My plan began the next day, when I rode my horse through the park with Fritz and waved to everyone who bowed to me. The more my people saw of me, the more they would realise I cared about them and their lives. I

was not going to be a distant king who people only heard about. And as I had done before the coronation, I wanted to be seen most in the old town, where most of the poor people lived.

Riding through some of the narrowest and oldest town streets, I stopped to buy flowers from a poor young girl with a gold coin. This attracted a lot of interest, and soon hundreds of people were following me on my way to the home of Princess Flavia.

I knew the Princess was very popular and the people seemed very pleased that I had gone to see her. Moreover, if I had the support of the Princess, this could only help me. Fritz also thought this was a good idea and came with me on my visit to the Princess's palace.



وبدأت خطتي في اليوم التالي، وذلك عندما ركبت جوادي من خلال الحديقة مع فريتز وكنت ألوح لكل من ينحني لي -. فمما لاشك فيه كلما رأيته شعبي أسير بينهم ، كلما أدركوا أكثر أنني أهتم بهم وبحياتهم. لم أكن أريد أن أكون ملكا بعيدا عن شعبي يسمع فقط الناس عنه. وكما فعلت قبل التتويج، أردت أن أتفقد الجزء القديم من المدينة ، حيث يقيم معظم الناس الفقراء. وأثناء تفقدي لبعض الشوارع الضيقة والقديمة، توقفت لشراء بعض الزهور من فتاة شابة فقيرة ودفعت إليها عملة ذهبية. ولقد جذب صناعي هذا الكثير من اهتمام الناس البسطاء، وسرعان ما تبغني المنات منهم في طريقي إلى منزل الأميرة فلافيا. كنت أعلم أن الأميرة تتمتع بشعبية كبيرة جدا لذا بدا الناس في غاية السعادة عندما ذهبت لرؤيتها. فضلا عن ذلك، فإني إذا حصلت على دعم الأميرة لي فإن ذلك سيعزز من موقعي، ولقد اعتقد فريتز ذلك أيضا واعتبرها فكرة جيدة، وجاء معي في زيارتي لقصر الأميرة.

14-I was shown into a guest room full of enormous mirrors, paintings and beautiful furniture, and soon the Princess arrived with her servants. I knew that I had to be very careful when I talked to the Princess. I needed the Princess to trust me, but I did not want to say too much to her, or she would realise I was not the real King. And although I wanted to show her that I trusted her, she must not think she could say what she liked to me, because I was not the man she thought I was.

**"You have completely changed since you became King, sir,"** she said.

**"You need not call me 'sir',"** I told her. **"For after all, we are still cousins."**

She looked at me, then said, **"I'm proud to do so, Rudolf. But I think your face has changed."**

I needed to talk about something else, so I said, **"My brother's back in the city, I hear. He went away for a while, didn't he?"**

**"Yes, I hear he's back in Strelsau."**

**"That's good. The nearer he is to me, the better."**

The Princess looked at me. **"Do you want him to be near you so that you know what he's doing?"**

**"I'd like him to be near me because he's my half-brother. We're family!"** I answered. **"We need to help and support each other. Unfortunately, I've heard he can't stay in Strelsau for very long."**

أخذت إلى غرفة الضيوف والتي كانت مليئة بالمرايا الضخمة واللوحات والأثاث الجميل، وسرعان ما وصلت الأميرة مع خدمها. كنت أعرف أنني يجب أن أكون حذرا جدا عندما أتحدث إليها. وكنت بحاجة إلى كسب ثققتها، ولكن لم أكن أريد أن أتحدث إليها أكثر من اللازم ، لأنها قد تدرك بذلك أنني لست الملك الحقيقي. وعلى الرغم من أنني أردت أن أظهر لها أنني أثق بها، إلا أنها لا يجب أن تعتقد أنها قادرة على أن تقول ما تحب لي، لأنني لم أكن الملك الحقيقي. فقالت لي: "لقد تغيرت تماما منذ أن أصبحت الملك، يا سيدي،". فقلت لها: "لست بحاجة إلى أن تقول لي 'يا سيدي' ". "فعلى أية حال، فإنا لا نزال أبناء عمومة". فنظرت إلي ثم قالت: "أنا فخورة بذلك، يارودولف. ولكن أعتقد أن وجهك قد تغير." أردت أن أغير الموضوع ، لذلك قلت لها، "لقد عاد أخي مايكل مرة أخرى إلى المدينة، سمعت انه ذهب بعيدا لبعض الوقت، أليس كذلك؟" فقالت لي "نعم، سمعت أنه عاد إلى سترلسو". فقلت لها "هذا أمر جيد. فكلما كان قريبا مني كلما كان ذلك أفضل." فنظرت إلي وقالت. "هل تريد له أن يكون بالقرب منك حتى يتسنى لك معرفة ما يخطط لفعله؟" فقلت لها "أود منه أن يكون على مقربة مني لأنه أخي وان كان غير شقيق. فنحن أسرة واحدة!" وتابعت حديثي قائلا "نحن بحاجة إلى مساعدة ودعم بعضنا البعض، وللأسف، لقد سمعت أنه لا يستطيع البقاء في سترلسو لفترة طويلة."

15-She looked at me strangely when I said this, but at that moment there was a loud cheer from the streets outside. The Princess ran to the window, then she turned to me, looking anxious.

**"It's him!"** she said. **"It's the Duke of Strelsau! He's coming here now."**

I was surprised by this news and did not know what to say. For several minutes, Princess Flavia and I sat in silence. Her servants also stood silently, with their heads bowed. We could hear steps outside the door and I expected Michael to enter, but then the steps stopped, so we continued to talk again. I cannot remember what we talked about, but I found it very easy to talk to the Princess and time passed.

فنظرت إلى باستغراب عندما قلت ذلك، ولكن في تلك اللحظة كان هناك من يهتف بصوت عال بالخارج. فأسرعت الأميرة إلى النافذة، ثم تحولت إلي وبدأ عليها القلق. فقالت: "انه هو! الدوق مايكل قادم إلى هنا الآن". اندهشت بهذا الخبر، ولم أدري ماذا أقول. لعدة دقائق، جلست أنا و الأميرة فلافيا في صمت تام ووقف أيضا خدمها في صمت، ورووسهم منحنية تحية إلى قدوم الدوق. سمعنا طرق خطوات خارج الباب وكنت أتوقع دخول مايكل ، ولكن بعد ذلك توقفت الخطوات، لذلك واصلت الحديث مرة أخرى مع الأميرة. لم أستطيع أن أتذكر ما كنا نتحدث عنه، ولكنني وجدت أنه من السهل جدا التحدث مع الأميرة وممر الوقت.

16-I thought it was strange that Michael had not come into the room, but we did not talk about him at all until the Princess suddenly jumped up and said, **"You do know that Michael will be very angry. Is that a good idea?"**

**"What do you mean? How am I making him angry?"** I asked.

**"You haven't asked him to come in. He's been waiting outside the room for a long time."**

**"But of course he can come in,"** I said, realising I had made a serious mistake.

**"How funny you are,"** she said. **"You know that no one can enter without your permission."**

**"Of course,"** I said. **"I'd forgotten!"** But the Princess looked at me in a way that made me think she realised something was wrong.

**"I was never very good at remembering all the rules,"** I continued, wishing that Fritz had told me about this, **"but I'll go and get him myself at once."**

اعتقدت أنه أمر غريب أن مايكل لم يدخل الغرفة، ولكننا لم نتحدث عنه على الإطلاق حتى وقفت الأميرة فجأة وقالت: "أنت تعرف جيدا أن مايكل سيكون غاضبا جدا بذلك فهل هذه فكرة جيدة ؟!" "فسألتها "ماذا تقصدين؟ كيف لي أن اجعله غاضبا؟" فقالت لي. "أنت لم تطلب منه الدخول وهو ينتظر بالخارج منذ فترة طويلة." فقلت لها "لكن بالطبع إنه يمكنه الدخول" أدركت أنني قد ارتكبت خطأ فادحا. فقالت لي "كم أنت مضحك يارودولف أنت تعرف أنه لا يمكن لأحد أن يدخل الغرفة دون إذن منك." فقلت لها "بالطبع، كنت قد نسيت ذلك!" لكن الأميرة نظرت إلي بطريقة جعلتني أعتقد أنها أدركت أن ثمة شيء خطأ قد حدث. فتابعت حديثي قائلا "أنا لم أكن أبدا جيدا في تذكر جميع القواعد يا ليت فريتر قد أخبرني أن أخي بالخارج ولكنني سأذهب واحضره بنفسني في الحال."

17-I opened the door and went out of the guest room to greet Michael. He was sitting at a table looking very angry. All his men were standing next to him. I held out my hand and Michael stood up slowly and took it, then I showed him into the Princess's guest room.

**"Brother,"** I said, **"I'm so sorry. I didn't know you were waiting, otherwise I'd have asked you in sooner."**

He thanked me, but coldly. Michael did not seem to be good at hiding his feelings, and I could see that he was angry with me. I could also see he was trying to pretend that he thought I was the real King.

فتحت الباب وخرجت من غرفة الضيوف لتحية مايكل. وكان يجلس على طاولة بالخارج ويعطوه الغضب الشديد. وجميع رجاله يقفون بجانبه. مددت يدي ووقف مايكل ببطء وصافحني، ثم رافقته إلى غرفة الضيوف الخاصة بالأميرة. فقلت له "أنا أسف جدا يا أخي لم أكن أعلم أنك تنتظر بالخارج وإلا كنت قد طلبت منك الدخول في الحال." فقدم الشكر لي ولكن ببرود. فهو لم يكن جيدا في إخفاء مشاعره، واستطعت أن أرى أنه كان غاضبا جدا مني. ورأيت أيضا أنه كان يحاول التظاهر بأنه يعتقد أنني الملك الحقيقي.

18-We sat down with the Princess.

**"You've hurt your hand,"** he said.

**"Yes, an animal bit me,"** I explained. **"It'll be fine."**

**"Is there any danger from the bite?"** Flavia asked.

**"Not from this,"** I said looking at Michael, **"but if I gave him the chance to bite again, it would be different."**

**"Did you kill the animal?"** Flavia asked.

**"No,"** I said. **"We're waiting to see if his bite's poisonous."**

**"And if it is?"** said Michael, smiling coldly, clearly understanding who I was really talking about.

**"He'll be knocked on the head,"** I said.

**"But he might bite again,"** said Michael.

**"I'm sure he'll try,"** I replied, smiling. Then, worried that Michael would say something I did not want to hear, I decided to change the subject. I told him how fine his soldiers were and thanked him for the splendid coronation. I thanked him for the great time I had had at the hunting lodge in the forest. When he heard this, he jumped to his feet and angrily walked towards the door. Then he stopped and said, **"Three of my friends would very much like to meet you, sir. They're waiting outside."**

جلسنا مع الأميرة. وسألني مايكل قائلا: "لقد أصيبت يدك،" فقلت له "نعم، لقد عضني حيوان و سوف أكون على ما يرام." فسألني الأميرة فلافيا: "هل هناك خطورة من العضة؟" فقلت لها وأنا أنظر إلى مايكل. "ليس من أول مرة ولكن إذا أعطيته فرصة ليعضني مرة أخرى، فإن الأمر سيكون مختلف." فقلت لي: "هل قتلت الحيوان؟" فقلت لها "لا نحن ننتظر لنرى إذا كانت لدغته سامة." فقال مايكل وهو يبتسم ببرود ويعلم يقينا عن من أتحدث: "وإذا كان الحيوان ساما؟" فقلت له: "سيلقى حتفه" فقال لي: "لكنه قد بعضك مرة أخرى" فاجبته مبتسما: "أنا متأكد من أنه سوف يحاول". ثم، قررت أن أغير الموضوع خشية أن يقول مايكل شيئا لا أود أن اسمعه. فقلت له كم كان جنوده ظرفاء وشكرته على حفلة التتويج الرائعة. كما شكرته على الوقت الجميل الذي قضيته في كوخ الصيد بالغابة. وعندما سمع ذلك وقف مسرعا، وسار نحو الباب غاضبا. ثم توقف وقال: "ثلاثة من أصدقائي يودون أن يلتقوا بكم، يا سيدي. إنهم ينتظرون بالخارج".

19-So I walked up to Michael and took his arm and we entered the outside room like best friends. Michael asked the three men to come forward.

**"These gentleman are the most loyal and honest of the King's servants, and are my great friends."**

**"I'm very pleased to meet them,"** I said.

They bowed before me one at a time: first De Gautet, a tall, thin French man with straight hair; then Bersoni, the Belgian, who was large and about thirty years old; and finally Detchard, the Englishman, who had a thin face, strong shoulders and very short hair. He looked like a good fighter and a bad character. I spoke to him in English with a pretend foreign accent, and I am sure I saw him smile when I spoke.

So, Detchard knows my secret, I thought. And if he knew, surely all the Six Men knew as well. How dangerous were these special soldiers? And how safe was I, even in the palace of Strelsau?

فسرت إليه وأخذت بيده ودخلنا الغرفة الخارجية وكأنا أصدقاء أعزاء. وطلب مايكل من الرجال الثلاثة التقدم إلى الأمام. فقال لي مايكل: "هؤلاء الرجال هم الأكثر ولاء وأمانة للملك، وهم أيضا أعز أصدقائي" فقلت له: "وأنا مسرور للقاءهم". انحنى الرجال أمامي في وقت واحد: وكان أولهم رجل فرنسي رفيع وطويل القامة ذو شعر ناعم وكان يدعى دي جاتيت والثاني رجل بلجيكي ضخم وعمره يناهز الثلاثون عام وكان يدعى برسوني وأخيرا دينتشارد، الإنجليزي، الذي كان نحيف الوجه، وقوي الكتفين وشعره قصير جدا. وبدا عليه أنه مقاتل جيد ولكن ذو شخصية سيئة. تحدثت إليه باللغة الإنجليزية ولكن بلكنة غريبة، كنت واثق من أنني رأيته يبتسم عندما كنت أتحدث. فاعتقدت أنه يعرف حقيقتي، وإذا كان يعرف حقيقتي، فبالتأكيد جميع الرجال الستة يعرفون أيضا. فما أخطر هؤلاء الجنود الخاصة؟ وما مدى سلامتي، حتى وأنا في قصر سترلساو؟



# Questions & Answers

**1- Why did Rudolf Rassendyll think that Sapt's second plan was too dangerous?**

➤ Because the Duke and his men knew that he wasn't the real King.

**2- Why couldn't the duke say anything about Rassendyll even though he knew Rassendyll was not the real King?**

➤ Because his men kidnapped **تم اختطافه** the King and killed his servant. If he told people that Rassendyll wasn't the real King, people would ask him where the real King was and he would appear guilty **مذنب**.

**3- What did Sapt plan to do if the real King was dead?**

➤ He planned that Rassendyll would remain **يظل** as King.

**4- According to Sapt, why was it important to have a King in Strelsau?**

➤ King Rudolf Elphberg was held prisoner **سجين** at the Castle of Zenda. If they didn't have a King in Strelsau, Michael would take the crown **يستولي على التاج**.

**5- According to Sapt, when would Rudolf Rassendyll stay king for life?**

➤ He would stay king for life if the real King (Rudolf Elphberg) was killed.

**6- Why did Michael's men go back to the hunting lodge **البيت الريفي** carrying spades **جاروف**?**

➤ They went back to bury **يدفن** Josef's body so as to hide their evil work.

**7- What did Rassendyll mean that some of those evil men should join Josef?**

➤ He meant that some of them should be killed. They should join Josef in death.

**8- Why couldn't Rudolf Rassendyll continue fighting **قتال** Michael's men?**

➤ There were men all around him and he was about to be trapped **يتم الإيقاع به**.

**9- What did Rudolf Rassendyll do during the fight against Michael's men at the hunting lodge?**

➤ He knocked one man off **أوقع** his horse then hit another big man with his sword.



**10- How did Rudolf Rassendyll escape when Michael's men were about to trap him** على وشك الإيقاع به؟

- Rudolf Rassendyll saw a gap ثغرة between the men. He turned his horse and quickly rode through the gap ثغرة towards the forest.

**11- How was Rudolf Rassendyll injured أصيب in the fight قتال against Michael's men?**

One of Michael's men shot him أطلق عليه النار and he felt a terrible pain ألم فظيع in his finger.

**12- What did Sapt do to help Rudolf Rassendyll whose finger hurt badly?**

Sapt put a bandage ضمادة on Rudolf Rassendyll's finger إصبع.

**13- How did Rudolf Rassendyll hide his identity شخصيته when he and Sapt reached a farm on their way back from the hunting lodge?**

He covered غطى his face, saying to the farmer that he had a bad tooth.

**14- How did Sapt explain Rassendyll's injured finger to Freyler?**

Sapt said that Rudolf Rassendyll had caught his finger in a door.

**15- Who was Freyler?**

He was a servant at the King's palace.

**16- Where was King Rudolf Elphberg?**

He was held prisoner سجين by Duke Michael at the Castle of Zenda.

**17- Who told Rudolf Rassendyll about the King's duties واجبات?**

Sapt told Rudolf Rassendyll about the King's duties واجبات. He told him what he ought to يجب أن do and what he ought not to do.

**18- Why did Rudolf Rassendyll feel worried when he met the French ambassador سفير?**

Because the French ambassador asked him a question that he couldn't answer.

**19- Why did Sapt think that Duke Michael wouldn't kill the King?**

Because the Duke knew that if he killed the King, Rudolf Rassendyll would stay as King instead.

**20- Why couldn't Michael accuse يتهم Rudolf Rassendyll of anything?**

Because if he did, people would know that he had kidnapped خطف the King.

**21- Who are the Six Men? Where are they from?**

They are six special soldiers that Duke Michael keeps in his house all the time. Three are from Ruritania, one is French, one is Belgian, and one is English.

**22- Rassendyll decided to keep some of his plans secret from Sapt and Fritz. What were those plans?**

He planned to make himself as popular محبوب as he could, and not to say anything bad about Michael. This way, if there were a fight قتال, some of the people would support يؤيد him (the King) and not Michael.

**23- How did Rassendyll plan to make use of Flavia's popularity شعبية?**

He went to see Princess Flavia. The poor people seemed very pleased that he had visited the Princess.

**24- What did Rudolf Rassendyll tell Michael about the cause سبب of the injury إصابة in his hand?**

Rudolf Rassendyll said that an animal bit him عضة.

**25- What did Rassendyll tell Princess Flavia and Duke Michael about his injured مصابة hand?**

He said he had been bitten عضة by a wild بري animal and if it bites يعض again he would knock يضرب it on the head.

**26- Why was Rassendyll worried when he met three of Michael's Six Men?**

Because he realised أدرك that they knew he was not the real King and was worried for his safety أمن.

**27- How did Rassendyll know that the Six Men also know his secret سر?**

He knew because of the way Detchard smiled at him when he was presented يقدم to him. Rassendyll knew that if one of the Six Men knew, they would all know.

## Quotations

**1- 'You're mad! The plan's too dangerous!'**

**1- Who says this to whom?**

- Rassendyll says this to Colonel Sapt.

**2- Where are they?**

- They are at the hunting lodge near بالقرب من Zenda.

**3- What is the dangerous plan?**

- Sapt wants Rassendyll to continue to pretend يتظاهر to be the King and to return to Streisau that night.

**2- 'We've got them! They can't say anything without showing their guilt.'**

**1- Who says this to whom?**

- Sapt says this to Rassendyll.

**2- Why does he say this?**

- He is trying to persuade يقنع Rassendyll to continue to be the King.

**3- Who is "them"? What does the speaker mean by "We've got them"?**

- "Them" is Duke Michael and his men. The speaker means that they have trapped the Duke and his men. The Duke can't say anything against Rassendyll because he would have to admit يعترف that he is guilty مذنب of kidnapping خطف the real King.

**3- 'Surely someone in Strelsau will realise I'm not the real King.'**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rudolf Rassendyll said that to Sapt.

**2- Who was the real King?**

- Rudolf Elphberg was the real King.

**3- Why did the speaker pretend يتظاهر to be the King?**

- He looked exactly تماما like the King. The King was held prisoner by Duke Michael. If there were no King in Strelsau, Michael would take the crown يستولى على التاج.

**4- 'Of course it's a risk مجازفة, but we must have a King in Strelsau. You must do it, for Ruritania!'**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Sapt said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- What did the speaker mean يقصد by "it's a risk مجازفة"?**

- He meant that someone might realise يدرك that Rudolf Rassendyll wasn't the real King and his life could be in danger فى خطر.

**2- Why must they have a King in Strelsau?**

- The real King was held prisoner and if there were no King in Strelsau, Duke Michael could take the crown.

**5- 'They'd know that you would stay King if they killed him!'**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Sapt said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- Who did the speaker mean by "they" and who was meant by "him"?**

- He meant Duke Michael and his men. "Him" referred to تشير الى the real King.

**3- Where was the King (Rudolf Elphberg) at that time?**

- He was held prisoner at the Castle of Zenda.

**6- 'Well done! That was very brave. Do you think they saw who you were?'**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Sapt said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- When was this said?**

- This was said after Rudolf Rassendyll and Sapt had a fight against Michael's men at the hunting lodge.

**3- Did they see who the addressed person was? How do you know?**

- Yes, one of the men said, "It's the King" before Rassendyll pushed him off his horse.

**7- "Good! That will give Michael something to worry about."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Sapt said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- When was this said?**

- This was said after Rassendyll and Sapt had a fight against Michael's men at the hunting lodge. One of Michael's men thought that Rudolf Rassendyll was the King.

**3- What would Michael worry about?**

- He would worry that Rassendyll might do everything he could to protect the crown.

**8- "My King, you're safe! I'm so pleased."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Fritz said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- When was this said?**

- This was said when Rudolf Rassendyll and Sapt came back from the hunting lodge.

**3- The speaker mistook أخطأ the addressed person for someone else. Explain.**

- Fritz mistook Rudolf Rassendyll for the King because Rudolf Rassendyll looked exactly like the King.

**9- "Even Fritz thinks you're the real King!"**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Sapt said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- Why did Fritz think that person was the real King?**

- He thought so because Rudolf Rassendyll looked exactly like the King.

**3- Where was the real King at that time?**

- He was held prisoner by Duke Michael at the Castle of Zenda.

**"The King's had a good long sleep."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Sapt said this to Princess Flavia's servant.

**2- Where and when was this said?**

- This was said at the royal palace القصر الملكي when Princess Flavia sent her servant to find out how the King was feeling after the coronation.

**3- Did "the King" have a really good long sleep? Why?**

- No, he didn't because he had just come back from the hunting lodge.

**11- "But Duke Michael's holding him prisoner."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rudolf Rassendyll said this to Fritz.

**2- When was this said?**

- This was said when Fritz asked if the King was dead.

**3- Why was the King held prisoner by Duke Michael?**

- He was held prisoner سجين because Duke Michael wanted to take the crown.

**12- "Rest? No! We mustn't waste any time! Shouldn't we plan how to attack Michael?"**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Fritz said this to Rudolf Rassendyll and Sapt.

**2- Who wanted to rest? Why?**

- Rudolf Rassendyll wanted to rest يستريح because he had a long tiring day and he wasn't used to hard work.

**3- Why did the speaker want to attack Michael?**

- Because Michael held the King prisoner and Fritz wanted to set the King free.

**13- "But wait. He'll kill the King"**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Fritz said this to Sapt and Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- Where were the other half of Michael's Six Men and what were they doing there?**

- The other half were at the Castle of Zenda. They were guarding يحرس the King.

**3- Who were the Six Men?**

- They were six special soldiers who were completely loyal أوفياء to Duke Michael.

**14- "So no one can do anything! It's a stalemate!"**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Fritz said this to Rudolf Rassendyll and Sapt.

**2- When was this said?**

- This was said when Rudolf Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz were discussing what they should do to stop Michael and save the King.

**3- What did the speaker mean by "it's a stalemate" ورطة?**

- He meant that they couldn't do anything to set the King free and Michael couldn't accuse Rassendyll of anything as people would ask where the real King was.

**15- "I wasn't going to be a distant King who people only heard about."**

**1- Who said this?**

- Rudolf Rassendyll said this.

**2- Why did the speaker want to make himself popular?**

- Because he hoped to stop يمنع the poorer people of Strelsau from thinking badly about him. يسئ الظن به

**3- What did the speaker do that attracted the attention of many people?**

- On his way to Princess Flavia's palace, he bought flowers from a poor young girl with a gold coin. Soon, hundreds of people followed him on his way to the home of the Princess.

**16- "You have completely changed since you became King, sir."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Princess Flavia said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- Where was this said?**

- This was said at Princess Flavia's palace.

**3- What made the speaker think that "the King" had changed?**

- Princess Flavia didn't realise تدرك that Rudolf Rassendyll wasn't the real King. The real King didn't care about يهتم the people. Rudolf Rassendyll wanted the people to see that the King trusted يثق them. He wanted them to have a good opinion of the King and support يؤيد him.

**17- "You do know that Michael will be very angry. Is that a good idea?"**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Princess Flavia said this.

**2- To whom was it said?**

- It was said to the king (Rudolf Rassendyll).

**3- What was it that would make Michael very angry?**

- The king (Rudolf Rassendyll) left him waiting outside the guest room at Flavia's house and didn't ask him to come in.

**18- "Yes, an animal bit me. It'll be fine."**

**1- Who said this to whom? Where was this said?**

- Rudolf Rassendyll said this to Duke Michael. This was said at Princess Flavia's house.

**2- Was it really an animal that caused the speaker's injury?**

- No, it wasn't. He was shot by one of Duke Michael's men.

**3- When was the speaker injured?**

- He was injured when he was fighting against Michael's men at the hunting lodge.

**19- "These gentlemen are the most loyal and honest of the King's servants, and are my great friends."**

**1- Who said this to whom? Where was this said?**

- Duke Michael said this to Rudolf Rassendyll. This was said at Princess Flavia's house.

**2- Who were "these gentlemen"?**

- They were three of Duke Michael's Six Men.

**3- Was the speaker right when he said that those gentlemen were loyal to the King? Why? Why not?**

- No, he wasn't because these men were only loyal to Duke Michael who wanted to kill the King and take the crown.

**Find the mistake in each sentence and correct it**

1- ☒ It was **safe** for Rudolf Rassendyll to continue pretending to be the King.

- ☑ It was **dangerous** for Rudolf Rassendyll to continue pretending to be the King.
- 2- ☑ The Duke's men came to the hunting lodge to **kill Sapt and Rassendyll**.  
☑ The Duke's men came to the hunting lodge to **bury Josef's body**.
- 3- ☑ One of **Rassendyll's** men thought that Rassendyll was the King.  
☑ One of **Michael's** men thought that Rassendyll was the King.
- 4- ☑ **Sapt** thought at first that the real King had returned.  
☑ **Fritz** thought at first that the real King had returned.
- 5- ☑ Rassendyll found the work of being a King **easy**.  
☑ Rassendyll found the work of being a King **difficult**.
- 6- ☑ **Sapt** wanted to hurry and make plans to attack Michael.  
☑ **Fritz** wanted to hurry and make plans to attack Michael.
- 7- ☑ **Michael** kept some of his plans from Sapt and Fritz.  
☑ **Rassendyll** kept some of his plans from Sapt and Fritz.
- 8- ☑ Rassendyll **knew** that Michael couldn't enter without his permission.  
☑ Rassendyll **didn't know** that Michael couldn't enter without his permission.
- 9- ☑ Rassendyll's hand was hurt because he **was bitten by an animal**.  
☑ Rassendyll's hand was hurt because he **was shot**.
- 10- ☑ Rassendyll met **all the Six Men**.  
☑ Rassendyll met **only three of them**.
- 11- ☑ Rassendyll was slightly injured because he **was bitten by an animal**.  
☑ Rassendyll was slightly injured because he **was shot by one of Michael's men**.
- 12- ☑ Freyler was Sapt's **farmer**.  
☑ Freyler was Sapt's **servant**.
- 13- ☑ Rassendyll realised that Michael's Six Men knew that he was not the real **duke**.  
☑ Rassendyll realised that Michael's Six Men knew that he was not the real **King**.
- 14- ☑ **Fritz** began to worry about his own safety.  
☑ **Rassendyll** began to worry about his own safety.
- 15- ☑ Sapt and **Fritz** attacked some of the Duke's men.  
☑ Sapt and **Rassendyll** attacked some of the Duke's men.
- 16- ☑ Rassendyll warns **the animal** not to bite again.  
☑ Rassendyll warns **Michael** not to bite again.
- 17- ☑ Rassendyll decided on a plan to make himself **unpopular**.  
☑ Rassendyll decided on a plan to make himself **popular**.
- 18- ☑ Sapt wanted to be more cautious with **Fritz**.  
☑ Sapt wanted to be more cautious with **Duke Michael**.
- 19- ☑ Rassendyll was worried when the French **prince** asked him a question which he couldn't answer.  
☑ Rassendyll was worried when the French **ambassador** asked him a question which he couldn't answer.
- 20- ☑ **Sapt** wanted to hurry and make plans to attack Michael.  
☑ **Fritz** wanted to hurry and make plans to attack Michael.
- 21- ☑ If Michael killed the King, Rassendyll would stay **Duke**.  
☑ If Michael killed the King, Rassendyll would stay **King**.
- 22- ☑ The Six Men are special **sailors** who Michael keeps in his house at all times.  
☑ The Six Men are special **soldiers** who Michael keeps in his house at all times.
- 23- ☑ Three of the Six Men are from **Britain**, but the others are foreigners.  
☑ Three of the Six Men are from **Ruritania**, but the others are foreigners.
- 24- ☑ Rassendyll stopped to buy **bread** from a poor young girl with a gold coin.  
☑ Rassendyll stopped to buy **flowers** from a poor young girl with a gold coin.



## **Homework ((A))**

### **A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Why did Sapt want Rassendyll to stay king ?
- 2- Why did Rassendyll think that returning to the capital was too dangerous?
- 3- Why wouldn't Michael say that Rassendyll wasn't the real king?
- 4- How did Sapt make Rassendyll overcome his doubts?
- 5- What would happen if the real king was dead?
- 6- What did Sapt and Rassendyll see from the Hunting Lodge window ?
- 7- Why were Michael's men carrying spades when they went to the Hunting Lodge?
- 8- Why did Michael's men want to bury Josef's body?
- 9- Sapt and Rassendyll were too brave at the Hunting Lodge. Illustrate
- 10- Why was Rassendyll keen on attacking Michael's men at the Lodge?
- 11- How did Rassendyll escape from Michael's men?
- 12- How was Rassendyll's finger hurt and nursed?
- 13- How did Rassendyll justify covering his face to the farmer?
- 14- How did Rassendyll know that the men knew him?
- 15- Why was Sapt and Rassendyll's arrival at the gates well-timed ?
- 16- What did Sapt tell Freyler about the king's hurt finger ?
- 17- How did Sapt and Rassendyll get inside the palace?
- 18- What was Fritz's reaction on seeing Rassendyll back from Zenda?
- 19- Why did Fritz bow *يحنى* to Rassendyll?
- 20- What did Rassendyll tell the servant of princess Flavia?

### **B) Read the following quotation and answer the questions:**

1- ***"You are mad ! The plan is too dangerous ! "***

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) What was the dangerous plan ?
- c) Why did the speaker protest against that plan?

2- ***"He caught his finger in a door"***

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) What made the speaker say so?
- c) How was the pretend king's finger hurt ?

3- ***"Listen, if you are aman , you can save the king. "***

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) Where was this said ?
- c) What would happen if that person refused to replace the king?

4- ***"Well done! That was very brave. Do you think they saw who you were?"***

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) When was that said?
- c) Did they see who the addressed person was? How do you know?

5- ***"Don't speak so loudly! People will hear us "***

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) Why did the speaker want the listener to be quiet?
- c) What was the occasion?

### **C) Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:**

- 1- Rassendyll's shoulder was hit by a bullet .
- 2- Michael's men came to the hunting Lodge with guns to bury Josef's body.
- 3- Michael's men had killed the king.

- 4- Sapt and Rassendyll took revenge for killing the Duke.
- 5- Rassendyll escaped through a wall between the men.
- 6- The streets of the town were very busy when Sapt and Rassendyll arrived.
- 7- Princess Flavia sent her brother to the king.
- 8- Rassendyll refused to carry on as a king.
- 9- Josef was about to be trapped by Michael's men.
- 10- Fritz was worried lest the real king should be saved.

## **Homework ((B))**

### **A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- What did Fritz think when he saw Rassendyll returning from Zenda?
- 2- Why couldn't Rassendyll write or sign all the documents ?
- 3- When did Rassendyll realize that the king's life was quiet hard ?
- 4- Why was Rassendyll worried when he met the French ambassador?
- 5- Why did Fritz describe the situation as a stalemate *ورطة*?
- 6- Who were the six men ?
- 7- How many of the six men were there in Strelsau?
- 8- Why were three of the six kept in Zenda ?
- 9- What was Rassendyll's plan to make himself popular?
- 10- Rassendyll was keen to go to the house of the princess. Give reasons
- 11- On the way to the prince's palace, Rassendyll (the king) made himself more popular. Explain
- 12- What did Rassendyll tell Michael about his hurt finger?
- 13- Why couldn't Michael get into the room where the king was?
- 14- How did Rassendyll cover up his mistake?
- 15- Whom did Michael introduce to the king at Flavia's palace ?
- 16- How did Rassendyll speak to Detchard?
- 17- How did Rassendyll know that all the six men knew his identity?

### **B) Read the following quotation and answer the questions:**

**1- "Would they try to kill me "**

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) What does " **they** " refer to?
- c) Who would order them to kill the speaker ?

**2- "My king , You are safe. I'm so pleased "**

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) When was this said?
- c) The speaker mistook the addressed person for someone else. Explain

**3- "The king's had a good long sleep. "**

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) Where and when was this said ?
- c) Did "the king" really have a good long sleep? Why ?

**4- "I'm very pleased to meet them "**

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) What does " **them** " refer to?
- c) Where did that conversation take place?

**5- "You know that no one can enter without your permission "**

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) What were they talking about?

c) How did the listener justify making such a mistake?

6- "That's good. The nearer he is to me, the better."

a) Who said these words? To whom?

b) About whom was the speaker talking?

c) What was the listener's reaction?

**C) Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:**

1- The six men were loyal to the king.

2- People of England wanted the King to marry the princess.

3- Rassendyll told the princess that he was bitten by an owl.

4- Michael told Rassendyll that the animal would try to reward him again.

5- Part of Rassendyll's plan was to make the Duke as popular as he could.

6- Rassendyll, the pretend king, was visited by several kings.

7- Michael was happy for being kept waiting for long at Flavia's palace.

8- Michael was good at hiding his feelings.

9- Fritz and Sapt corrected any mistakes made by Michael.

10- The princess was hated by people.



say good bye to	يودع	warn	يحذر
mean / meant / meant	يعنى	proclaim	يعلن رسميا
responsibilities	مسئوليات	get himself into	يورط نفسه في
position	مكانة	run a country	يدير دولة
society	المجتمع	forgive	يسامح
almost	تقريبا	keep up the drawbridge	يرفع الجسر
notice	يلاحظ	permission	إذن/ تصريح
growing popularity	شعبية متزايدة	rules	قواعد
forgive	يسامح	argument	جدل
occasional	من حين لآخر	ambitions	طموحات
decisions	قرارات	reluctant	ممانع
rescue	ينقذ	whisper	يهمس
trap	يحتجز	ladder	سلم
imprisoned	محبوس / مسجون	follow directions	يتبع التعليمات
murder	يقتل	stand close to	يقف بالقرب من
messenger	رسول	hold / held / held	يحمل / يمسك
trick	خدعة	authority	سلطة
defend	يدافع عن	ruler	حاكم
iron table	مائدة من المعدن	at the duke's order	بناء على أوامر الدوق
bullets	طلقات رصاص	jump with fright	يقفز هلعاً
fire at	يطلق النار على	punish	يعاقب
ball	حفلة رقص	a summer house	منزل صيفي
fair	عادل	a loyal friend	صديق وفي
realise	يدرك	quiet life	حياة هادئة

1-I was not sorry to say goodbye to my brother and his soldier friends, although I was sad to say goodbye to the Princess. Should I tell her the truth? Was I wrong to pretend to be the King? I did not know.

**"Rudolf, be careful, won't you?"** the Princess said.

**"Be careful of what?"** I asked.

**"I can't say. But think what your life means to the people of Ruritania."** she said.

I remembered what Rose had said about my brother Robert back in England: **"He realises his position in society brings with it responsibilities."** I had always wanted to have a quiet life, but I suddenly realised how many responsibilities I now had here in Ruritania. How on earth had I got myself into such a situation?

١. لم أكن أسفاً أن أقول وداعاً لأخي وأصدقائه الجنود، على الرغم من أنني كنت حزينا أن أقول وداعاً للأميرة. وهل يجب أن أقول لها الحقيقة؟ وهل كنت مخطئاً أن أظهار بأنني أنا الملك؟ لم أكن أعرف. قالت الأميرة: "كن حذراً يا رودولف، أليس كذلك؟". فسألتها: "أكن حذراً من ماذا؟" فردت قائلة: "لا يمكنني أن أقول لك، ولكن فكر كم تعني حياتك بالنسبة لشعب روريتانيا". تذكرت ما قالته روز عن أخي روبرت عند عودته لإنجلترا: "إنه يدرك أن مركزه في المجتمع يجلب معه مسؤوليات". كنت قد أردت دائماً أن أعيش حياة هادئة، ولكنني أدركت فجأة قدر المسؤوليات التي على عاتقي الآن وأنا هنا في روريتانيا. يا الهي! كيف وضعت نفسي في مثل هذا الموقف؟

2-After the next few weeks, I am pleased to say that no one seemed to notice I was not the real King of Ruritania. Because I looked so like the King, it was much easier for me to pretend to be him than to pretend to me by neighbour at home, for example. I learnt a lot about how a country is run, but I made mistakes, sometimes big ones. I became very good at pretending I had forgotten rules or people that I had met, and I hoped my growing popularity with the people of Ruritania would help them to forgive my occasional bad decisions.

٢. خلال الأسابيع القليلة التالية، يسرني أن أقول أنه لا أحد يبدو عليه أنه يلاحظ أنني لست الملك الحقيقي لـروريتانيا. لأنني كنت كثير الشبه جداً بالملك، فعلى سبيل المثال كان من السهل جداً لي أن ادعي أنني الملك أكثر من ادعائي أمام جاري في المنزل بأنني أنا، تعلمت الكثير عن كيفية إدارة بلد ما، لكنني ارتكبت أخطاء، وأحياناً أخطاء كبيرة وأصبحت متقناً جداً في التظاهر و كنت قد نسيت القوانين و الناس الذين قد قابلتهم من قبل ، وكان عندي أمل في أن شعبيتي المتزايدة بين شعب روريتانيا ستجعلهم يسامحوني على قراراتي السيئة التي كنت قد اتخذتها في بعض الأحيان.

3-One day apt came into my room. **"Here's a letter for you,"** he said.

**"From the writing, I think it's from a woman. I also have some important news."**

**"What is it?"** I asked.

**"We now know that the King's at the Castle of Zenda,"** he said.

**"How do you know this?"**

**"We asked where the rest of the Six Men were, and found out that they are all there at the castle: Lauengram, Krafstein and young Rupert Hentzau, the three biggest criminals in Ruritania."**

**"Do you think the King's definitely there?"** I asked.

**"Almost certainly. The three men are always at the castle, and people say the drawbridge is nearly always kept up. That is not normal. No one goes into the building without the permission of Rupert or Michael."**

**"Then I must go to Zenda,"** I said.

**"That wouldn't be a good idea."**

**"If not today, then soon. I must go there."**

**"You'll probably stay there forever if you do,"** said Sapt.

٣. في أحد الأيام دخل سابت حجرتي وقال لي: "هذا خطاب لك، ومن كتابة الخطاب أعتقد أنه مرسل من امرأة، و عندي أيضاً بعض الأخبار الهامة" فسألتها: "ما هي؟" فقال: "نحن الآن نعرف أن الملك في قلعة زندا" فقلت له: "كيف عرفت هذا؟" فقال: "نحن سألنا عن مكان باقي الستة رجال،

واكتشفنا أنهم كلهم هناك في القلعة ، وكان منهم : لوينجرام و كرافستين و روبرت هنتزو الشاب و هؤلاء الثلاثة هم أكبر مجرمين في روريتانيا. " فقلت له: " هل تعتقد أن الملك فعلا هناك ؟" فقال: "يكاد يكون من المؤكد ذلك. الرجال الثلاثة هم دائما في القلعة، ويقول الناس أن هناك جسر متحرك يحتفظون به بصفة شبه دائمة ، وهذا شيء غير عادي. ولا أحد يذهب إلى المبنى بدون الحصول على إذن من روبرت أو مايكل. " فقلت: "إذاً يجب أن أذهب إلى "إذا لم يكن اليوم، ففي وقت قريب لابد من الذهاب إلى هناك." فقال سابت: "من المحتمل أن تبقى هناك إلى الأبد إذا زلنا". "هذه لن تكون فكرة جيدة." قمت بذلك."

4-I was silent and I could see that Sapt was studying my face.

**"What's worrying you, Rassendyll?"** he asked.

**"Tell me, Sapt, why is it that wherever I go in the capital, I'm followed by six people?"**

**"Because I've ordered them to follow you."**

**"But why?"**

**"It would be very useful for Michael if you disappeared. And if you disappear, the game's over."**

**"I don't need such help,"** I protested. **"I can look after myself."**

**"De Gautet, Bersonin and Detchard are in Strelsau, and anyone of them could catch you easily,**

كنت صامتا، وكنت أرى أن سابت يدرس وجهي. سألتني: "ما الذي يقلقك يا راسندل؟". فقلت له: "أخبرني يا سابت، لماذا عندما أذهب إلى العاصمة يقوم ستة أشخاص بمتابعتي؟" فقال "لأنني أمرتهم أن يتابعوك." فقلت: "ولكن لماذا؟" فقال: "سيكون من المفيد جدا لمايكل إذا أنت اختفيت. وإذا أنت اختفيت سنتتهي اللعبة." و اعترضت على هذا قائلا: "أنا لست بحاجة إلى مثل هذه المساعدة، فأنا أستطيع الاعتناء بنفسي." فقال لي، كما لو أنني طفل صغير ، و ديتشارد في سترلسو، وكل واحد منهم يمكنه القبض عليك بسهولة" "إن دي جوتيت، وبيرسون

5-He said, as if I were a child. **"So, what's that letter?"** said Sapt, pointing at the one he had given me.

I opened it and read it aloud:

**If the King wants to know something important, please do what I ask. At the end of New Avenue, there is a house in a large garden. There is a wall around the garden with a gate at the back. At midnight tonight, go through the gate where you will see a statue of a horse, turn right and walk twenty metres. There you will find six steps up to a summer house. Go into this summer house and someone will tell you something very important about your life. But you must be alone. If you do not come, your life will be in danger. I am a loyal friend to you. Do not show this letter to anyone, or it will put a woman in great danger: Michael will punish me.**

**"Yes, and Michael can also write a very good letter,"** said Sapt.

I thought the same: surely Michael had written this letter to trap me.

ه. و قال سابت و هو يشير إلى الخطاب الذي أعطاني آياه: "إذاً، ما الذي تحتويه تلك الرسالة؟" ففتحت الرسالة وأخذت في قراءتها بصوت عال: ( إذا كان الملك يريد أن يعرف شيئا مهما، فمن فضلك افعل ما أطلبه. يوجد في نهاية الشارع الجديد يوجد منزل في حديقة كبيرة. وهناك سور حول الحديقة به بوابة في الخلف. في منتصف هذه الليلة ادخل من البوابة إلى المكان الذي ستري فيه تمثال لحصان، اتجه يمينا وامشي عشرين مترا. وهناك سوف تجد ست درجات سلم إلى منزل صيفي. ادخل في هذا البيت الصيفي و سوف تجد شخص سوف يقول لك شيئا مهم جدا عن حياتك. ولكن يجب أن تكون بمفردك. و إذا لم تأتي سوف تكون حياتك في خطر. أنا صديقا وفيك لك. لا تظهر هذه الرسالة إلى أي شخص، و الا سوف تكون هناك امرأة في خطر كبير: مايكل سيعاقبني." فقال العقيد سابت. "نعم، ويمكن أن يكتب مايكل أيضا رسالة جيدة جدا"، واعتقدت أنا نفس الشيء: بالتأكيد قد كتب مايكل هذه الرسالة لكي يوقع بي .

6-I was about to throw the letter in the bin, when I saw that there was more writing on the other side.

**If you do not believe me, ask Colonel Sapt.**

**"What?"** said the Colonel, so I read on.

**Ask him what woman has been a guest of the Duke. Ask if her name begins with A.**

**"It must be Antoinette de Mauban,"** I cried.

"**How do you know?**" asked Sapt, and I told him all I knew about the woman.

"**I've heard that she came to Ruritania with her servants as a guest of Michael,**" Sapt said. "**People say she had a great argument with Michael, and now she's staying somewhere in Strelsau.**"

"**So she could be useful to us,**" I suggested.

"**Perhaps she would be useful if she had information about Michael. However, I believe that Michael wrote that letter,**" said Sapt.

"**So do I, but I'm not certain,**" I said. "**I'll go to the house tonight.**"

"**No, you mustn't,**" said Sapt. "**Let me go instead.**"

"**You can come too, but you must wait outside the gate when I go in alone.**"

"**I don't believe this woman and you're mad to go!**" said Sapt.

"**I believe this woman, and I will go,**" I said. "**Either I go to the house, or I go back to England. We don't have much time. Every day we leave the King imprisoned there's more danger. We must move quickly,**" I said.

Sapt was beginning to know when he could tell me what to do and when he could not. So **reluctantly** he agreed with me.

٦. وكنت على وشك أن ألقى الرسالة في سلة المهملات، إلا أنني رأيت أن هناك كتابة أكثر مكتوبة على الجانب الآخر. وهذه الكتابة هي : (إذا كنت لا تصدقني، فأسأل العقيد سابت). فقال العقيد: "ماذا؟"، لذلك أكملت القراءة : (أسأله عما إذا كانت المرأة ضيفة للدوق. أسأله عما إذا كان اسمها يبدأ بحرف (فصحت قائلاً: "من المؤكد أن تكون هذه المرأة هي أنطونيت دي موبان". فسال سابت: "كيف عرفت ذلك؟" فقلت له كل ما عرفته عن المرأة. و أـال قال سابت: "لقد سمعت أنها جاءت لروريتانيا مع خدمها و نزلت ضيفة عند مايكل"، ويقول الناس أنها كانت في جدال كبير مع مايكل، والآن هي تقيم في مكان ما في سترلسو". فاقترحت قائلاً: "إذاً يمكن أن تكون مفيدة بالنسبة لنا". فرد علي العقيد سابت: "ربما تكون مفيدة إذا كان لديها معلومات حول مايكل، و مع ذلك فأنا أعتقد أن مايكل هو الذي كتب تلك الرسالة". فقلت له: "و أنا أيضاً أعتقد ذلك، ولكنني لست متأكداً، وسأذهب إلى المنزل هذه الليلة". فحذرني سابت قائلاً: "لا، لا يجب أن تفعل ذلك أبداً، دعني أنا أذهب بدلاً منك". فقلت: "يمكنك أن تأتي أيضاً، ولكن يجب عليك أن تنتظر خارج البوابة بينما أذهب أنا إلى داخل المنزل بمفردي". فقال لي سابت: "أنا لا اصدق هذه المرأة وأنت مجنون إن قررت الذهاب!". فقلت له: "أنا اصدق هذه المرأة، وسوف أذهب" وأضفت قائلاً: "إما أن أذهب إلى المنزل، أو أعود إلى إنجلترا، ونحن ليس لدينا الكثير من الوقت. فكل يوم نترك الملك سجيناً فإن هناك المزيد من الخطر، لذا يجب علينا التحرك وبسرعة"، وبدأ العقيد سابت يدرك متى يمكنه أن يقول لي ما يجب القيام به ومتى لا يمكنه ذلك. لذا على مضض اتفق معي.

7- half past eleven that night, we got on our horses and soon arrived outside the gate to the house, carrying our guns. It was a very dark night.

"**I'll wait for you here, outside the gate,**" said Sapt. "**Good luck.**"

I opened the gate and I found myself in a leafy garden. I saw the statue of the horse and walked across the garden with the gun in my hand. I followed the directions given in the letter and, although it was dark, I soon arrived at the summer house. When I went inside, I heard a woman's voice. "Shut the door," the woman whispered. I did as she asked and then looked around the room, which was lit by a small candle. It was almost empty except for a small **iron** table and two chairs. In the soft light, I could just see Antoinette in front of me and her servant behind.

٧. وفي تمام الساعة الحادية عشرة والنصف من تلك الليلة، ركبنا خيولنا وسرعان ما وصلنا خارج بوابة المنزل، نحمل سلاحنا. وكانت ليلة مظلمة جداً. فقال لي العقيد سابت: "سأنتظرك هنا، خارج البوابة، حظاً سعيداً". فتحت البوابة ووجدت نفسي في حديقة مورقة. ورأيت تمثال حصان ومشيت عبر الحديقة ومسدت في يدي. تابعت التعليمات والإرشادات التي كانت بالرسالة، على الرغم من شدة الظلام، وسرعان ما وصلت إلى المكان المراد. وعندما دخلت سمعت صوت امرأة يهمس قائلاً: "أغلق الباب". فعلت ما طلبت مني ونظرت في أرجاء الغرفة، التي كانت مضاءة بواسطة شمعة صغيرة. كانت الغرفة شبيهة خالية باستثناء طاولة حديدية صغيرة وكرسيين. وخلال هذا الضوء الخافت رأيت أنطونيت ومن ورائها خادمتها.

8- "**We have little time,**" Antoinette said. "**Listen! I know who you are and I know you're not the King. You're Mr Rassendyll. I wrote that letter to you at the Duke's orders. In twenty minutes, three men will be here to kill you.**"

**"Or I'll kill them! I suppose they're three of the Duke's Six Men?"**

**"Yes, you must leave here before they arrive, so listen carefully! The plan is to kill you and to take your body into the old town. It'll be found and Michael will arrest Colonel Sapt and Captain Fritz von Tarlenheim for murdering you. Then a messenger will be sent to Zenda and the real King will be murdered too. The Duke will then become King. Do you understand?"**

**"Oh, yes, I understand. It's a clever plan. But why are you helping me?"**

**"I don't like to see people being killed. Now go. But remember, you're never safe in this city. You have guards following you, don't you? Well, Michael's men are following them. If you're alone, then you'll die. Now go quietly this way past the summer house for about a hundred metres. There you'll find a ladder against the wall. Climb it and run as fast as you can."**

٨. فقالت لي: "لدينا القليل من الوقت"، وأضافت قائلة: "اسمع! أعرف من أنت وأنا أعلم أنك لست الملك. أنت السيد راسندل. كتبت لك تلك الرسالة لأنه بأمر من الدوق في غضون عشرين دقيقة سيكون هنا ثلاثة رجال لقتلك". فقلت لها: "أو أقتلهم أنا! أظن أنهم ثلاثة من الرجال الستة خاصة الدوق؟" فقالت لي: "نعم، ويجب أن تغادر هذا المكان قبل وصولهم، لذا عليك الاستماع بعناية! فالخطة هي قتلك، وإلقاء جثمانك في البلدة القديمة. بعد ذلك يتم العثور على جثتك ومن ثم يعتقل مايكل كلا من سابت وفريتز ويتهممهم بقتلك. ثم يتم إرسال رسول إلى زندا و يقتل الملك الحقيقي أيضا. حينئذ سوف يصبح الدوق هو الملك. هل فهمت؟" فقلت لها: "نعم، أفهم. أنها خطة ذكية، ولكن لماذا تساعدني؟" فقالت لي: "أنا لا أحب أن أرى الناس يقتلون" وأضافت "أذهب الآن. ولكن تذكر، أنك لن تكون أبدا آمنا في هذه المدينة. لديك حرس يتبعك، ليس كذلك؟ حسنا، رجال مايكل يراقبونهم، وينتظرون اللحظة التي تكون فيها بمفردك ليقتلوك. الآن اذهب بهدوء من هذا الطريق المجاور للمنزل لحوالي مائة متر، وهناك ستجد سلم على الجدار. تسلقه ثم اركض بأسرع ما يمكن"

**9-"And what will you do?" - "I also have a game to play. I'll tell the Duke's men that you never came. If the Duke doesn't find out what I've done, we may meet again."**

**"Thank you. You've helped the King tonight," I said. "But before I go, tell me something: Do you know where he is in the castle?"**

**"Yes, I do know. Inside the castle there's a door on the right, and behind that – but listen! They're here! It's too late for you to escape!"**

I looked through a gap in the summer house door and saw three men standing outside. Then I heard a voice, which spoke in English:

**"Are you in there, Mr Rassendyll?"**

I did not answer.

**"We want to make you an offer," the voice said. "Will you let us in?"**

**"Do not trust them," said Antoinette quietly.**

٩. فقلت لها: "وماذا ستفعلين؟" فقالت لي: "لدي حيلة. سأقول لرجال الدوق أنك لم تأتى إلى هنا، وإذا لم يكتشف الدوق ما قممت به، قد أراك مرة أخرى. فقلت لها: "شكرا لك. لقد ساعدتني الملك هذه الليلة". وأضافت: "لكن قبل أن أذهب، قولى لي شيئا: هل تعرفين أين مكان الملك في القلعة؟" فقالت لي: "نعم أعرف، داخل القلعة هناك باب على اليمين، ووراء ذلك ... ولكن اسمع إنهم هنا فات الأوان بالنسبة لك لتهرب!" نظرت من خلال فجوة في باب البيت ورأيت ثلاثة رجال يقفون في الخارج. ثم سمعت صوتا، يتكلم بالانجليزية: "هل أنت هناك، يا سيد راسندل؟" لم أرد عليهم. فقال الصوت: "نحن نريد أن نقدم لك عرضا. هل تأذن لنا بالدخول؟" فقالت لي انطونيت بهدوء: "لا تثق بهم".

**10-"Stand outside and talk," I called. "I won't let you in."**

**"That's a good idea," said the voice, who I thought must be Detchard.**

**"Is that Mr Detchard?" I asked.**

**"Our names are not important. We can offer you a safe journey to the border and fifty thousand English pounds," he continued.**

**"That sounds a generous offer," I said, but of course I did not trust them at all. "Give me a minute to think."** Then I told Antoinette and her servant to stand close to the wall, away from the door.

**"What are you going to do?" Antoinette asked.**



**"You'll see."**

I picked up the iron table and held it by the legs so it was in front of me. Then I said, **"Gentlemen, I'd like to accept your kind offer. Perhaps you can open the door for me."**

**"Why don't you open the door yourself?"** said Detchard.

**"Very well, but it opens outwards,"** I explained. **"You'll need to step back or the door will hit you."**

I pretended to try and open the door, and called out, **"I can't open it."**

**"Then I'll open it,"** called Detchard.

١٠. فقلت للصوت: "قف مكانك وتحدث فلن أسمح لك بالدخول." فقال الصوت الذي اعتقدت انه بالتأكيد ديتشارد: "هذه فكرة جيدة." فسألته: "هل أنت السيد ديتشارد؟" فقال لي: "الأسماء ليست مهمة، نحن يمكن أن نوفر لك رحلة آمنة إلى الحدود و ٥٠٠٠٠ جنيه انجليزي". فقلت له: "يبدو هذا عرضا سخيا، ولكن بالطبع لم أكن أثق بهم على الإطلاق." أعطني دقيقة للتفكير. "ثم قلت لأنطونيت وخادمتها أن يقفا على مقربة من الجدار، بعيدا عن الباب. فسألتني أنطونيت: "ما الذي تنوي القيام به؟" فقلت لها. "سترين". التقت الطاولة الحديدية من الساقين، وجعلتها أمامي. ثم قلت: "أيها السادة، أود قبول عرضكم السخي، إذا تفضلتم بفتح الباب لي" فقال لي ديتشارد: "ولماذا لا تقوم بفتح الباب بنفسك؟" فقلت لهم "حسنا جدا، ولكنه يفتح إلى الخارج"، وأضفت قائلا: "ستحتاجون إلى التراجع قليلا وإلا سوف يصطدم الباب بكم." تظاهرت بأنني أحاول فتح الباب، وناديتهم بصوت عالي "لا يمكنني فتحه." فقال ديتشارد "سأحاول فتحه".

11-As Detchard was walking up to the door, I moved quietly to the back of the summer house. It took him a few seconds to open the door, but as



soon as he did, I ran at him as fast as I could holding the table in front of me.

There was a terrible noise as all three men fired their guns at once, but I was protected by the table top. The men were all standing on the steps up to the summer house, so as I ran out, the table top hit them and they all fell down the steps. Before I knew what was happening, I too was falling down the steps, but as I was on top of the men, I managed to get up fastest and run away, firing my gun behind me.

١١. وبينما كان ديتشارد يسير إلى الباب، انتقلت بهدوء إلى الجزء الخلفي من المنزل. استغرق الأمر منه بضع ثوان لفتح الباب، ولكن بمجرد أن فتحه، تقدمت نحوه بأسرع ما يمكن وأنا أمسك بالطاولة الحديدية أمامي. كان هناك صوت ضجيج رهيب عندما أطلق الرجال الثلاثة نيرانهم دفعة واحدة، ولكنني كنت محمي بالطاولة الحديدية. كان الرجال جميعا على مقربة من الباب وعندما انطلقت نحوهم وأنا أمسك بالطاولة سقطوا جميعا على الأرض. وقبل أن أدرك حقيقة ما يحدث وجدت نفسي أيضا اسقط عليهم من شدة اندفاعي ولكن سرعان ما قمت ولذت بالفرار، وأنا أطلق النيران من مسدسي خلفي.

12-There were angry shouts and more shots. I remembered what Antoinette had said about a ladder and soon found it and climbed over the wall in seconds. Running along the outside of the wall, I heard more shots but realised they were being fired by Sapt, who was trying to get into the gate.

**"Sapt! It's me, let's go!"** I shouted.

**"You're safe!"** he cried in surprise.

**"I have a fine story to tell you about a table!"** I told him, as we jumped on our horses and rode quickly back to the palace.

١٢. كان هناك مزيداً من صيحات الغضب والطلبات النارية. تذكرت ما قالته لي أنطوانيت عن السلم وسرعان ما وجدته وقفزت من فوق الجدار للخارج ، سمعت طلقات أكثر ولكن أدركت أنه يجري إطلاق النار عليهم من قبل العقيد سابيت ، الذي كان يحاول الوصول إلى البوابة. فصحت فيه قائلاً: "سابيت! أنه أنا، هيا نذهب!" . فصرخ مندهشاً: "أنت آمن!" فقلت له ونحن نركب الخيول مسرعين نحو القصر: "لدي قصة جميلة لأقصها عليك تتعلق بطاولة!"

13-The next day, Sapt read me the latest report from the Chief of Police.

**"Some interesting things have been happening this morning,"** said Sapt. **"The police report says that the Duke of Strelsau left the capital by the road to Zenda. An hour later, he was followed by De Gautet, Bersonin and Detchard, who had a bandage around his arm,"** I was pleased that my shot the night before had been a good one.

**"Finally, listen to this: the people of the capital are not happy that the King has yet to marry the Princess. Some people say that if they do not marry soon, it would be better if the Princess married the Duke of Strelsau. However, the King is having a ball tonight for the Princess."**

**"I don't know anything about a ball,"** I said.

**"Oh, it has all been prepared,"** said Fritz, **"by me."**

**"Listen,"** said Sapt. **"You must ask the Princess to marry you tonight."**

**"I can't do that,"** I said. **"It wouldn't be fair to the Princess."**

١٣. وفي اليوم التالي، قرأ لي العقيد سابيت آخر تقرير أمني من رئيس الشرطة. فقال سابيت وهو يقرأ التقرير: "لقد حدث هذا الصباح بعض الأشياء المثيرة للاهتمام. التقرير يقول أن الدوق غادر العاصمة متجهًا إلى زندا. وبعد ساعة، عاد الدوق ومعه كل من دي جونت ، بيرسونين وديتشارد ، الذي كان يضع ضمانة حول ذراعه" كنت سعيداً بأن طلقني الليلة الماضية قد أصابت أحدهم. وتابع سابيت حديثه قائلاً: "وأخيراً، استمع إلى هذا: شعب العاصمة ليس سعيداً لأن الملك لم يتزوج الأميرة ويقول البعض أنه إذا لم يكن الزواج قريباً، فإنه سيكون من الأفضل إذا تزوجت الأميرة من الدوق. ، ورغم ذلك فإن الملك سيقوم بحفلة رقص للأميرة الليلة". فقلت له: "أنا لا أعرف أي شيء عن حفلة الرقص هذه". فقال فريتز "أوه، لقد تم الإعداد لها" فقال لي سابيت: "اسمع فقلت له: "لا أستطيع أن أفعل ذلك ففيه ظلم للأميرة". يجب أن تطلب من الأميرة الزواج منك هذه الليلة."

14-That evening, the ball was a great success. After we had eaten, I sat with the Princess and some of my other guests in a small room by the palace gardens. The servants brought us coffee and we had time to talk.

**"You've been King for a few weeks now,"** said the Princess, **"Everyone says you've done a very good job. I'm very pleased for you."**

**"You know, someone once said to me, 'a person who has a position in society has responsibilities.' Recently I've realised how true this is."**

**"Haven't you always thought that?"** asked the Princess.

**"No, when I was younger, I didn't think I needed to worry about society, I thought that was someone else's job,"**

The Princess looked very surprised. **"But you always knew that you would become King. How could you think that was someone else's job?"**

١٤. كانت الحفلة ناجحة جداً. وبعد تناول الطعام ، جلست مع الأميرة وبعض ضيوفي الآخرين في غرفة صغيرة بجوار حدائق القصر. جلب الخدم لنا القهوة وكان لدينا الوقت للحديث. فقالت لي الأميرة: " أنت الملك لبضعة أسابيع حتى الآن والكل يشهد لك بالكفاءة. وأنا سعيدة بك". فقلت لها: "ذات مرة قال لي شخص إن الشخص الذي لديه مكانة في المجتمع عليه أيضاً مسؤوليات ولقد أدركت مؤخراً مدى صحة ذلك". فسألتنى الأميرة: "الم تفكر في ذلك؟". فقلت لها " لم أفكر في ذلك، فعندما كنت صغيراً، لم أكن أعتقد أنني بحاجة للقلق بشأن المجتمع، لأنه مهمة شخص آخر، " اندهشت الأميرة للغاية. وقالت: "لكنك كنت دائماً على علم أنك ستصبح الملك. فكيف يمكن أن تعتقد أن هذا العمل مهمة شخص آخر؟"

15-Once again, I had made a mistake in what I said. But suddenly, instead of saying something to cover up my mistake, I wanted to tell the Princess the truth. She was kind and clever and she was going to marry the King. She should know what had happened to her future husband, and she should know all about my game. I decided I had to tell her everything.

"**Flavia**," I said quietly, so none of the other guests could hear, "**there's something you should know. I'm not really ...**"

But I never finished the words I wanted to say because at that moment, we heard footsteps in the garden outside the room. I looked up and jumped with fright, because a face suddenly appeared at the **French window**

١٥. مرة أخرى، ارتكبت خطأ في ما قلته. ولكن فجأة، وبدلاً من أن أقول شيءاً للتغطية على خطأي، أردت أن أقول للأميرة الحقيقة. وكانت عطوفة وذكية كما أنها كانت ستتزوج الملك. لذا ينبغي أن تعرف ما حدث لزوجها في المستقبل، وأنها يجب أن تعرف كل شيء عن قيامي بدور الملك. فقررت أنني لا بد أن أقول لها كل شيء. فقلت لها بهدوء لكي لا يسمعي أحد من الضيوف الآخرين: "فلافيا هناك شيء يجب أن تعرفيه، إنني حقاً لست .....". لم أكمل ما أردت أن أقوله لها لأنه في تلك اللحظة، سمعنا صوت خطي في الحديقة خارج الغرفة. نظرت إلى أعلى وقفزت من شدة الخوف، لأن وجهه ظهر فجأة من النافذة الفرنسية.

16-I relaxed when I saw that the person looking in on us was Sapt. "**I apologise, but there's someone who wants to see you, sir,**" he said to me, but I could tell from his eyes that he was angry. How long had he been listening to my conversation with the Princess? Had he heard that I was about to tell her the truth about who I really was?

We returned to the ball where the Princess went quickly away with her servants and I was welcomed by other important people at the ball. I realised then that my game had gone too far to go back: I could not tell anyone who I really was or they would think I was mad. Sapt had stopped me from saying too much to the Princess, and Sapt's plan really was working.

١٦. شعرت بالهدوء عندما رأيت أن الشخص الذي كان ينظر من النافذة هو العقيد سابت. فقال لي: "معذرة، ولكن هناك من يريد أن يقابلك، يا سيدي"، ولكنني يمكنني أن أدرك من عينيه أنه كان غاضباً. ترى كم من الوقت قد استمع إلى حديثي مع الأميرة؟ وهل سمع أنني كنت على وشك أن أكشف لها عن حقيقتي؟ عدنا إلى الحفلة وأسمرت الأميرة مع خدمها وقام بعض الناس المهمين بالترحيب بي. ثم أدركت أن قيامي بدور الملك قد وصل إلى مرحلة يستحيل التراجع عنها: فأنا لا يمكنني أن أخبر أي شخص عن حقيقتي وإلا سيعتقد أنني مجنون. لقد منعني العقيد سابت من التحدث كثيراً مع الأميرة، وقد كان محقاً.

17-The next morning, Sapt and I sat in my room thinking about what to do next.

"**Do you realise**," I said, "**that everyone really thinks I'm the King, even the Princess? I could even arrange for the Duke and the real King to be killed.**"

"**This is all true**," said Sapt. "**So will you do such a thing?**"

"**Of course not. I shouldn't be here, pretending to be anything. It isn't fair for the people of Ruritania and it isn't fair for the Princess, either. We can't wait any longer,**" I said. "**We must go to Zenda and rescue the King.**"

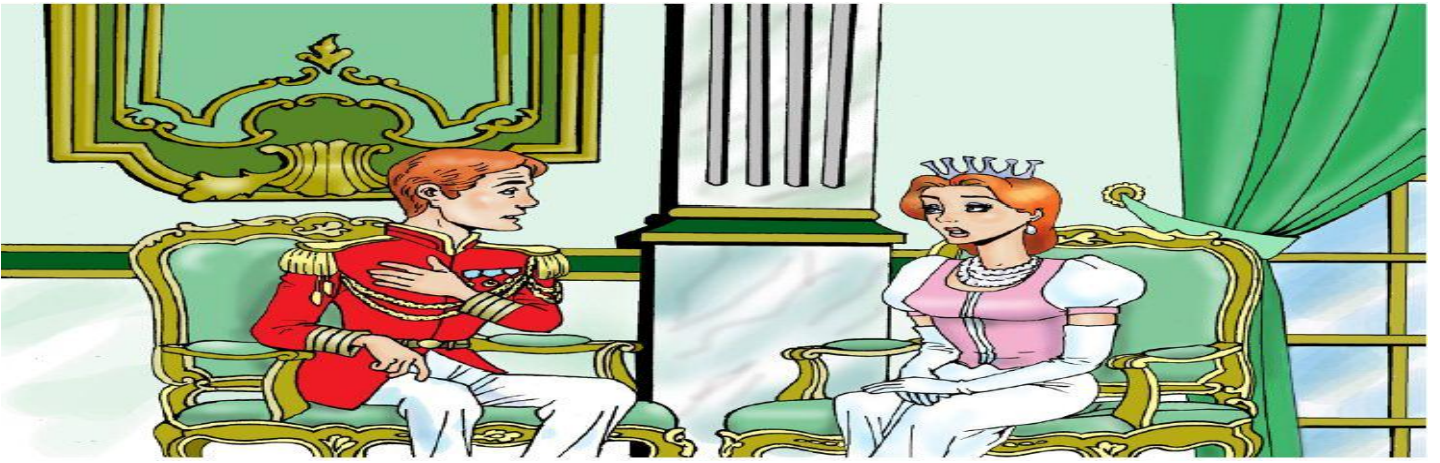
"**You're a good man,**" said Sapt.

١٧. وفي صباح اليوم التالي جلست، أنا والعقيد سابت في غرفتي لنفكر فيما يجب القيام به بعد ذلك. فقلت له: "هل تعلم أن الجميع يعتقد حقاً أنني الملك، حتى الأميرة؟ إنني يمكنني أن أرتب للتخلص من الدوق والملك الحقيقي معاً" فقال لي: "هذا كله صحيح ولكن هل ستفعل مثل هذا الشيء؟" فقلت له: "بالطبع لا. لا ينبغي لي أن أفعل ذلك، فليس ذلك من العدل لشعب روريتانيا كما أنه ليس من العدل للأميرة"، وأضفت قائلاً: "لا يمكننا الانتظار أكثر من ذلك، يجب أن نذهب إلى زندا وننقذ الملك." فقال لي: "أنت رجل صالح".

First, however, I needed to see Princess Flavia again. If I could not tell her the truth, I could at least warn her that the situation in Ruritania was not as good as she believed it to be. I visited her in her palace later that day, and she asked her servants to bring me some coffee. Then she told me that she had received two letters. One was from Michael, who had invited her to visit Zenda. Then she showed me the other letter.

"**I don't know who this one's from,**" she said.





I immediately knew who it was from: the writing was the same as the letter I had received. It was from Antoinette de Mauban and it read:

**You do not know me, but I do not want you to fall into the power of the Duke. Do not accept any invitation from him and do not go anywhere without many guards. Show this letter, if you can, to the leader of Ruritania.**

١٨. في البداية ، كنت بحاجة لمقابلة الأميرة فلافيا مرة أخرى. فإذا لم أستطع أن أقول لها الحقيقة، فعلى الأقل أخبرها بأن الوضع في روريتانيا ليس جيدا كما يبدو لها. فقامت بزيارة لها في قصرها في وقت لاحق من ذلك اليوم، وطلبت من خدمها أن يحضروا لي بعض القهوة. ثم قالت لي أنها قد تلقت رسالتين. أحدهما من مايكل، يدعوها لزيارة زندا. ثم بينت لي الرسالة الأخرى. وقالت لي: (أنا لا أعرف من صاحب هذه الرسالة" علمت على الفور من صاحب الرسالة: إنها انطونيت دو موبان لأنها بنفس خط الرسالة التي تلقيتها منها. وتقول في رسالتها: "أنتي لا تعرفيني، ولكن أنا لا أريد منك أن تقعي في قبضة الدوق. لا تقبلي أي دعوة منه ولا تذهبي لأي مكان دون حراسة مشددة. أعطى هذه الرسالة إلى زعيم "قائد" روريتانيا، إن استطعت ذلك).

**"Why does it say 'the leader' and not 'the King'?"** she asked.

**"You must do as the letter says,"** I said, not answering her question.

**"I'll order guards to watch you."**

**"Do you know who sent this?"** she asked.

**"A friend of mine. Today you must say you're ill so you can't go to Zenda."**

**"So you don't mind making Michael angry?"** she asked.

**"I don't mind anything if you're safe,"** I said.

١٩. فتساءلت الأميرة: "لماذا تقول 'زعيم' وليس 'ملك'؟". فقلت لها: "يجب أن تفعل كما تقوله الرسالة"، ولم ارد على سؤالها. فقلت لها: "سأطلب حراسة مشددة لحمايتك". فسألتني: "هل تعرف من الذي أرسل هذه الرسالة؟". فقلت لها: "صديق لي، واليوم يجب أن تقولي أنك مريضة وبالتالي لا يمكنك الذهاب إلى زندا". فقلت لي: "أليس لديك مانع من إغضاب الدوق مايكل؟". فقلت لها: "أنا لا أمانع أي شيء يحافظ على أمنك".

I had an idea about who would be the best guard for Princess Flavia, and I immediately visited Marshal Strakencz, who I knew I could trust. I asked him to guard the Princess and not to allow any of the Duke's men to visit her. I told him I was worried about the Duke's ambitions, and he did not look surprised.

**"I'm leaving Strelsau for a few days,"** I told him. **"Every evening, I'll send you a message. If you don't get a message for three days, you have the authority to say that you are now the head of Strelsau. You must then ask the Duke to allow you to see the King. If he doesn't allow you to see the King in twenty-four hours, you must say that the King's dead. Then you must tell the people of Ruritania who their new ruler will be. You do know who that will be?"**

**"Princess Flavia, of course,"** he answered.

٢٠. فكرت فيمن سيكون أفضل حارس للأميرة فلافيا، وعلى الفور قامت بزيارة المشير سترانكتش، الذي كنت أعرف أنني يمكنني أن أثق به وطلبت منه حراسة الأميرة وعدم السماح لأي من رجال الدوق بزيارتها. وقلت له إنني قلقا بشأن طموحات الدوق، ولم يندهش بقولي هذا. وقلت له: "سأغادر العاصمة سترلسو لبضعة أيام وكل مساء سوف أرسل لك رسالة، وإذا لم تصلك رسالة مني لمدة ثلاثة أيام، لديك السلطة أن تقول أنك الآن رئيس العاصمة سترلسو. ويجب عليك أن تطلب من الدوق أن يسمح لك أن ترى الملك، وإذا لم يسمح لك بذلك في أربع وعشرين ساعة، يجب عليك أن تعلن أن الملك قد مات، ثم يجب أن تعلن لشعب روريتانيا عن حاكمهم الجديد من سيكون" ثم سألته "أتعرف من سيكون ؟" فأجابني قائلا "الأميرة فلافيا، بطبيعة الحال

# Questions & Answers

**1- Why did Princess Flavia advise King Rassendyll to be careful at the end of his visit to her?**

- Because she knew that the King was in danger في خطر because Duke Michael wanted to take the crown التاج. Michael might try to kill the King.

**2- What had Rassendyll always wanted in life?**

- He had always wanted to have a quiet life.

**4- Why did Rudolf Rassendyll sometimes make big mistakes as a King?**

- Because he wasn't the real King. He was just pretending to be the King. He didn't know the rules.

**5- How would Rassendyll's growing popularity شعبية متزايدة with the people of Ruritania help him?**

- His growing popularity would make people forgive his occasional bad decisions.

**6- Rassendyll has never liked responsibilities. Now he has many. What responsibilities does he have?**

- He has to act يتصرف like the King. He has to run يدير the country. He has to try to rescue ينقذ the real King from Michael. He has to meet very important people and hold important meetings. He has to sign يوقع على very important documents وثائق. He has to care about the poor people in his country

**7- Why does Rassendyll become good at pretending he has forgotten rules or people he has met?**

- When he makes a mistake in pretending to be the King, he has to cover it up by pretending that he has forgotten something or someone.

**8- Why was the drawbridge at the Castle nearly always kept up?**

- The drawbridge الجسر at the castle was nearly always kept up to prevent anyone from entering the Castle.

**9- Who were the only two people who can give permission to anyone to go into the building?**

- They were Duke Michael and Rupert Hentzau.

**10- What does Sapt mean when he says "You'll probably stay there forever if you do"?**

- He means that Rassendyll will either be imprisoned in Zenda or killed there if he goes.

**11- Why does Sapt have Rassendyll followed everywhere? What does he mean by "If you disappear, the game's over"?**

- He has him followed to protect him from Michael's men. If they can kill or kidnap Rassendyll, they will kill the real King and make Michael the King. Rassendyll's game of pretending to be King would be over.

**12- What did Sapt do to protect Rassendyll from Michael and his men?**

- He ordered six men to follow him wherever he went in the capital.

**13- According to Sapt, what would happen if Rassendyll was killed?**

- The game would be over. That meant that Michael would also kill the King and take the crown.

**14- Who writes a letter to Rassendyll and what does it say? Who does he suspect really wrote it?**

- Antoinette de Mauban writes a letter. It tells him to come to a certain place in a summer house in a garden late at night. He suspects that Michael wrote the letter.

**15- What did Antoinette de Mauban ask Rassendyll to do in her letter?**

- She asked him to come to the summer house because she wanted to tell him something very important about his life.

**16- Why didn't Colonel Sapt want Rassendyll to go to the summer house?**

- He thought that the letter Rassendyll received from Antoinette de Mauban was actually written by Michael and that there was a trap مصيدة to kill Rassendyll.

**17- Why did Rassendyll insist على going to the summer house to meet Antoinette de Mauban?**

- He believed that she had information about Michael. He thought that every day they left the King imprisoned محبوس, there was more danger.

**18- What was Duke Michael's plan to trap and kill Rassendyll?**

- He ordered Antoinette de Mauban to write a letter to Rassendyll asking him to meet her at the summer house. Michael planned to send three of his men to kill Rassendyll there.

**19- If Michael's plan to kill Rassendyll at the summer house succeeded, what would he do after that?**

- Rassendyll's body would be taken into the old town. Sapt and Fritz would be arrested for murdering Rassendyll. Then, Michael would send a message to Zenda and the real King would be killed too. Finally, the Duke would become the King.

**20- According to Antoinette de Mauban, why did she want to help Rassendyll?**

- She said she didn't like to see people being killed.

**21- When Rassendyll talked to Detchard at the summer house, what did Detchard offer him in order to leave Ruritania?**

- He offered to give him 50,000 English pounds and a safe journey to the border.

**22- Why didn't Rassendyll accept the offer made by Detchard?**

- Because he didn't trust them at all. He knew it was a trap to kill him.

**24- How did Rassendyll come out of the summer house alive?**

- He held the iron table in front of him to protect him and he rushed out of the door and knocked the three men down. He ran quickly away.

**25- What did the report of the police chief say?**

- It said that Duke Michael left the capital to Zenda followed by three of his Six Men. The report also said that people believed that if the King and Princess Flavia didn't marry soon, it would be better if the princess married Duke Michael.

**26- Why did Detchard have a bandage around his arm?**

- He was shot during the fight with Rassendyll at the summer house the night before.

**27- Why have they prepared a ball for the Princess?**

- They want to make the people happy and make them think that the King wants to marry the Princess. They want Rassendyll to ask the Princess to marry him.

**28- Why did Rassendyll think it wouldn't be fair for Princess Flavia if he asked her to marry him?**

- Because he wasn't the real King.

**29- What mistake did Rudolf Rassendyll make while he was talking with Princess Flavia after the ball? Why was it a mistake?**

- He made a mistake when he said that when he was young, he didn't need to worry about society and that he thought that was someone else's job. Flavia was very surprised as she thought he was the real King and he should have always known that he would become King.

**30- Why did Rassendyll want to tell Princess Flavia the truth about himself?**

- Flavia was kind and clever and she was going to marry the King. She should know what happened to her future husband and should know about Rassendyll's game.



**31- What happened when Rassendyll was about to tell Flavia the truth about himself?**

- He heard footsteps outside the room. He saw Colonel Sapt who appeared suddenly and told Rassendyll that someone wanted to see him.

**32- Why did Rassendyll realise that his game (pretending to be the King) had gone too far to go back?**

- Because he couldn't tell anyone who he really was or they would think he was mad. In addition, he wanted to save the King.

**33- Why did Rassendyll think that pretending to be the King was unfair?**

- Rassendyll didn't believe he was doing the right thing. He thought that he had deceived the people of Ruritania and Princess Flavia.

**34- The day after the ball, the Princess received two letters. What were they and who were they from?**

- One was an invitation from Michael for her to visit him in Zenda. The other was a warning not to accept any invitations from Michael and not to go anywhere without many guards. It was from Antoinette de Mauban.

**35- What did Antoinette de Mauban warn Flavia not to do in her letter to her?**

- She warned her not to accept any invitation from Duke Michael and not to go anywhere without many guards.

**36- Who did Rassendyll think would be the best guard for Princess Flavia? Why?**

- Marshal Strakencz would be the best guard for Princess Flavia because Rassendyll trusted him.

**37- What did Rassendyll ask Marshal Strakencz to do to protect Princess Flavia?**

- He asked him to guard her and not to allow any of the Duke's men to visit her. He also told him about the Duke's ambition.

**38- What would Marshal Strakencz do if he didn't get a message for three days from Rassendyll?**

- He would have the authority السلطة to be the head of Strelsau. He had to ask the Duke to allow him to see the King. If he didn't see the King in twenty-four hours, he had to say that the King was dead dead. Then he had to tell the people of Ruritania that their new ruler would be Princess Flavia.

## **Quotations**

***1- "I can't say. But think what your life means to the people of Ruritania."***

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Princess Flavia said this to the King (Rudolf Rassendyll).

**2- Where was this said?**

- It was said at Princess Flavia's palace.

**3- What did the speaker mean when he/she said 'I can't say'?**

- She could not say why the King should be careful. She knew that the King's life was in danger because he had enemies who wanted to get rid of him.

**2- "How on earth had I got myself into such a situation?"**

**1- Who said this?**

- Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- Which situation was the speaker referring to?**

- Pretending to be the King of Ruritania.

**3- What was wrong with 'such a situation'?**

- Pretending to be a King was hard work for him. He wasn't used to such hard work. He always wanted to have a quiet life. Moreover, as a King, he had many responsibilities.

**3- "That's not normal. No one goes into the building without the permission of Rupert or Michael."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Colonel Sapt said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- What wasn't normal at the Castle of Zenda?**

- The drawbridge was nearly always kept up to prevent anyone from going into the building.

**3- Why wasn't anyone allowed into the building?**

- No one was allowed into the building because the King was held prisoner there. They didn't want anyone to try to set the King free.

**4- "You'll probably stay there for ever if you do."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Colonel Sapt said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- What did the speaker mean when he said this?**

- He meant that if Rudolf Rassendyll went to Zenda, Michael and his men would kill him.

**3- Why did the addressed person want to go to Zenda?**

- He wanted to go there to rescue the King who was held prisoner there.

**5- "I don't need such help. I can look after myself."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rudolf Rassendyll said this to Colonel Sapt.

**2- What did the addressed person do to help the speaker?**

- He ordered six men to follow the speaker wherever he went in the capital.

**3- Did the speaker really need 'such help'? Why? Why not?**

- Yes, he needed such help because Michael and his men wanted to kill him and the King to take the crown.

**6- I've heard that she came to Ruritania with her servants as a guest of Michael."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Sapt said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- When was this said?**

- This was said when Rudolf Rassendyll received a letter from Antoinette de Mauban.

**3- How could that woman be useful to Rudolf Rassendyll and Sapt?**

- She could give them information about Michael and help them to set the King free.

**7- "I don't believe this woman and you're mad to go."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Colonel Sapt said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- Who was 'this woman'?**

- The woman was Antoinette de Mauban.

**3- Why did the addressed person want to go to see 'this woman'?**

- As he believed that she might have information about Michael and the King

**8- "Listen! I know who you are and I know you are not the King."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Antoinette de Mauban said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- Where and when was this said?**

- This was said at Antoinette de Mauban's house when Rudolf Rassendyll went there after receiving a letter from her asking him to come to her house.

**3- Who was the real King and where was he at that time?**

- Rudolf Elphberg was the real King and he was held prisoner at the Castle of Zenda.

**9- "The plan is to kill you and to take your body into the old town."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Antoinette de Mauban said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- Who was going to kill that person and why?**

- Duke Michael was going to kill Rassendyll because he wanted to take the crown.

**3- Why would they take that person's body into the old town?**

- The body would be found there and Michael planned to arrest Colonel Sapt and Captain Fritz for murdering Rudolf Rassendyll.

**10- "I understand. It's a clever plan. But why are you helping me?"**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rudolf Rassendyll said this to Antoinette de Mauban.

**2- Which plan was the speaker talking about?**

- He was talking about Duke Michael's plan to kill him and the King to take the crown.

**3- Why was the addressed person helping the speaker?**

**11- "We want to make you an offer. Will you let us in? We can offer you a safe journey to the border and fifty thousand English pounds."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- One of Michael's Six Men said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- Why did Michael make this offer to Rudolf Rassendyll?**

- Rudolf Rassendyll was pretending to be the King and the real King was held prisoner. Michael wanted to get rid of both of them in order to get the crown.

**3- Did the addressed person accept the offer? What happened after that?**

- He pretended that he had accepted the offer. He asked one of Michael's Six Men to open the door. He used an iron table to protect himself as Michael's men fired their guns at him and he managed to escape.

**12- "But you always knew that you would become King. How could you think that was someone else's job?"**

**1- Who says this to whom?**

- Princess Flavia says this to "King" Rassendyll.

**2- Where are they?**

- They are at the ball in the palace.

**3- This was said in reaction to the other person's words. What did the other person say before this?**

- He said that when he was younger he didn't think he had any responsibilities to society.

**13- "It isn't fair for the people of Ruritania, and it isn't fair for the Princess, either. We can't wait any longer. We must go to Zenda...."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rudolf Rassendyll said this to Colonel Sapt.

**2- What did the speaker mean that it was not fair for the people of Ruritania and the Princess?**

- He meant that it was not fair that he pretended to be the King.

**3- Why did the speaker want to go to Zenda?**

- To rescue the King who was held prisoner there by Duke Michael.

**14- "I do not want you to fall into the power of the Duke. Do not accept any invitation from him and do not go anywhere without many guards."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- This was said by Antoinette de Mauban in her letter to Princess Flavia.

**2- Where was the addressed person supposed to go?**

- She was supposed to go to the Castle of Zenda.

**3- What did Rudolf Rassendyll advise the addressed person to do?**

- He advised her to say that she was ill and that she couldn't go to Zenda.

### **Find the mistake in each sentence and correct it**

1- ☒ Rassendyll was sad to say goodbye to **Duke Michael and his men.**

☒ Rassendyll was sad to say goodbye to **Princess Flavia.**

2- ☒ No one goes into the castle without Rupert **or Rassendyll's** permission.

☒ No one goes into the castle without Rupert or **Michael's** permission.

3- ☒ The letter tells the King to come to the summer house **with a friend.**

☒ The letter tells the King to come to the summer house **alone.**

4- ☒ Rassendyll tells Sapt he must wait outside **the summer house.**

☒ Rassendyll tells Sapt he must wait outside **the gate to the garden.**

5- ☒ Michael plans to kill **Rupert**, arrest Sapt and Fritz, and kill the real King.

☒ Michael plans to kill **Rassendyll**, arrest Sapt and Fritz, and kill the real King.

6- ☒ Rassendyll runs out the door holding a **chair** to protect himself.

☒ Rassendyll runs out the door holding a **table** to protect himself.

7- ☒ Detchard is wounded in the **leg** by Rassendyll's bullet.

☒ Detchard is wounded in the **arm** by Rassendyll's bullet.

8- ☒ Rassendyll is about to tell the Princess that he is not the real King but **Fritz** interrupts him to stop him.

☒ Rassendyll is about to tell the Princess that he is not the real King but **Sapt** interrupts him to stop him.

9- ☒ Duke Michael invites the Princess to visit him in Zenda but the other letter and **Sapt** tell her not to accept the invitation.

☒ Duke Michael invites the Princess to visit him in Zenda but the other letter and **Rassendyll** tell her not to accept the invitation.

10- ☒ Rassendyll shot **Rupert Hentzau** while escaping.

☒ Rassendyll shoots **Detchard** while escaping.

11- ☒ **Sapt** receives a letter from Antoinette de Mauban.

☒ **Rassendyll** receives a letter from Antoinette de Mauban.

12- ☒ Rassendyll orders **Sapt** to guard the Princess.

☒ Rassendyll orders **the Marshal** to guard the Princess.

13- ☒ **Flavia** tells Rassendyll Michael's plan.

☒ **Antoinette de Mauban** tells Rassendyll Michael's plan.

14- ☒ Rassendyll tells the Marshal he is leaving **Zenda.**

☒ Rassendyll tells the Marshal he is leaving **Strelsau.**

15- ☒ Rassendyll nearly tells the Princess **lies** about the King.

☒ Rassendyll nearly tells the Princess **the truth** about the King.

16- ☒ Sapt will be arrested if **Fritz** is killed.

☒ Sapt will be arrested if **Rassendyll** is killed.

## **Homework ((A))**

### **A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Why did the princess tell Rassendyll to be careful?
- 2- What responsibilities did Rassendyll have in Ruritania ?
- 3- Why did Rassendyll succeed in playing the king's role?
- 4- Because of his growing popularity, what did Rassendyll hope the people of Ruritania would do?
- 5- Why was Sapt sure that the king was at the Castle of Zenda ?
- 6- Was Rupert an important person ? If yes, how did you know ?
- 7- Why did Rassendyll want to go to Zenda ?
- 8- Why did Sapt warn Rassendyll of going to Zenda without planning?
- 9- Why did Antoinette send her first letter to Rassendyll ?
- 10- What did Rassendyll decide to do after reading the letter? Why?
- 11- Why did Antoinette want to help Rassendyll ?
- 12- What did Michael plan to do with Rassendyll, Sapt, Fritz and his brother?
- 13- What did Detchard offer Rassendyll at the summer house?
- 14- Why do you think Rassendyll pretended that he had accepted the offer?
- 15- How did Sapt make sure that the king was still alive ?
- 16- The iron table was more useful than guns in the battle between Rassendyll and Michael's men. Show how

### **B) Read the following quotation and answer the questions:**

1- ***" Do you think the king is definitely there? "***

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) What was the listener's reply?
- c) What was the occasion ?

2- ***"You'll probably stay there forever if you do "***

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) When does "**there**" refer to?
- c) Of what did the speaker warn the listener?

3- ***" I don't need such help I can look after myself. "***

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) Why did the speaker say that?
- c) What did that indicate about the personality of the speaker ?

4- ***"Because I have ordered the to follow you "***

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) Whom was the speaker talking about?
- c) Why were they ordered to follow the listener?

5- ***" I've heard that she came to Ruritania with her servants as a guest of Michael. "***

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) What did "she" refer to?
- c) What did she want from them?

6- ***"I don't like to see people being killed"***

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) What was the listener trying to escape?
- c) What was the listener's reaction?

**C) Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:**

- 1-The princess told Rassendyll to be brave as his life meant a lot to the people of Ruritania .
- 2- Three of Michael's six men were guarding the king at the palace.
- 3- No body was allowed into the castle without Michael's or Antoinette's permission.
- 4- Sapt didn't want Rassendyll to go to Flavia's house.
- 5- Fritz ordered six men to follow Rassendyll everywhere.
- 6- Antoinette asked Rassendyll to meet her at light house.
- 7- Sapt encouraged Rassendyll to go the summer house.
- 8- Michael planned to kill Sapt and take his body to the old town.
- 9- Rassendyll held the iron door to protect himself.
- 10-The king hoped that Rassendyll would disappear.

**Homework ((B))**

**A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- How did Rassendyll play a trick on Michael's men?
- 2- What did the Chief of Police report to the king (Rassendyll)?
- 3- What did Sapt ask Rassendyll to do during the ball ?
- 4-Rassendyll showed that he was a man of principles. Discuss
- 5-Why was Rassendyll against asking the princess to marry him?
- 6- What mistake did Rassendyll make while talking to Flavia at the ball?
- 7- Why couldn't Rassendyll tell Flavia he wasn't the real king?
- 8- Flavia received two letters. From whom and what was in each letter ?
- 9- What did Rassendyll advise her concerning Michael's letter?
- 10-How did Rassendyll try to ensure Flavia's safety during his absence ?
- 11- Why was the Marshal chosen to look after Flavia while the king was away
- 12- Who would be the new ruler if it became sure the king was dead ?

**B) Read the following quotation and answer the questions:**

**1- "Every day we leave the king imprisoned there is more danger. We must move quickly"**

- a)Who said these words to whom?
- b)Where was the king imprisoned?
- c)How would they move quickly ?

**2- "Listen I know who you are and I know you aren't the king "**

- a)Who said these words to whom?
- b)Where were they?
- c)Why did the speaker want to meet the listner?

**3- "Well, Michael's men are following them. If you are alone,then you'll die."**

- a)Who said these words to whom?
- b)What does " **them** " refer to ?
- c)Why did Michael want to kill the listner ?

**4-"Do not accept any invitation from him and don't go anywhere without many guards "**

- a)Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b)What does " **him**" refer to?
- c)Why did the speaker send that to the other person?

**5-"I can't do that, it wouldn't be fair to the princess."**

- a)Who said these words ? To whom ?

b) What does "that" refer to ?

c) Why wouldn't "that" be fair to the princess?

**6-"I have a fine story to tell you about a table."**

a) Who said these words ? To whom ?

b) Which story did the speaker refer to?

c) What was the occasion?

**C) Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:**

1- Rassendyll ran quickly away firing his gun behind him and injuring Detchard's leg.

2- The report said that Michael left the capital and went to Paris.

3- Fritz stopped Rassendyll from saying the truth to the princess.

4- Rassendyll told Flavia to pretend that she was busy so as not to go to Zenda.

5- Antoinette was asked to stand close to the door to be safe.

6- Michael was seen leaving Strelsau with a bandage on his arm.

7- Rassendyll could kill both Rudolf and Michael and became the Duke.

8- Rassendyll didn't mind anything in return for Flavia's money.



make a move against	يقوم بتحرك ضد	stab	يطعن
legally	بشكل قانوني	ride off	ينطلق بحصانه بعيدا
blame	يلوم / يوبخ	deceive	يخدع
go hunting	يذهب للصيد	encouragement	تشجيع
a large party of	مجموعة كبيرة من	spy	جاسوس
a hunting trip	رحلة صيد	wicked	شرير
relative	أحد الأقارب	chains	قيود
set (him) free	يحرره	stone pipe	أنبوب من حجر
duties	واجبات	weight	ثقل
criminal	مجرم	moat	خندق مائي
uncover	يكشف	attack	يهاجم
forgive	يسامح	secretly	سرا
the woods	الغابة	openly	علنا
brave	شجاع	betray	يخون
clear	واضح	otherwise	وإلا
rudely	بوقاحة	miracle	معجزة
rude	وقح	call out to	ينادي بصوت عال
in public	علنا	messenger	رسول
step	يخطو	bullet	رصاصة

1. It was nearly time for us to make a move against Duke Michael. I was with Marshal Strakencz who I had to trust to keep the future of Ruritania safe. **"You must promise that you'll protect Princess Flavia from the Duke."** I told him. **"As you know, his mother was not royal and he can only legally become King if he marries the Princess."**



**"I promise."** Marshal Strakencz said, bowing.

**"Now I'll write down what I've just said. But my finger still hurts."**

**"Yes, sir,"** he said, watching me write. **"The writing's a little different from your usual. I hope people know it's a real order from the King."**

**"I trust you"** I told him and he smiled.

**"The Princess will be safe with me."** he said.

لقد حان الوقت تقريباً بالنسبة لنا لاتخاذ خطوة ضد الدوق مايكل كنت مع المارشال ستراكنتش الذي لم أجد أفضل منه للحفاظ على مستقبل روريتانيا. قلت له: **"يجب أن تعدني أنك ستحمي الأميرة فلافيا من الدوق. فكما تعلم، لم تكن والدته من العائلة الملكية وانه يمكن فقط أن يصبح ملك بصورة قانونية إذا تزوج الأميرة."** فقال المارشال ستراكنتش وهو ينحني: **"أتعهد بذلك"**، **"الآن سأكتب ما قلت توأ، ولكن لا يزال أصبعي يؤلمني."** فقال وهو يشاهدني أكتب: **"نعم، يا سيدي، وهذه الكتابة مختلفة قليلا عن المعتاد منك، وأمل أن يعرف الناس انها أمر حقيقي من الملك."** قلت له: **"أنا أثق بك"** فابتسم قائلاً: **"الأميرة ستكون آمنة معي."**



2. I returned to the palace and told Sapt and Fritz to get ready to go to Zenda. There was only one thing left for me to do before we went. I went to tell Flavia that I was leaving Strelsau to go hunting. **"So you'd prefer to hunt animals than do your duties in the capital?"** she asked quietly.

**"The thing I hunt is a very big animal,"** I explained. **"Because I'll be hunting Michael."**

The Princess looked very worried. **"This'll be dangerous!"** she said. **"If I don't come back, you must become Queen for me."** She then stood tall and said, **"I don't really know what's going on, but I'll do whatever is right for Ruritania. If that means becoming the Queen, then so be it."**

**"Thank you,"** I said. **"Let us hope that it's not necessary."** I knew, however, that this was more than possible.

عدت إلى القصر واخبرت فريتز وسابت ان يستعدوا للذهاب إلى زندا، لم يكن هناك سوى شيء واحد يجب علي القيام به قبل ذهابنا، ذهبت لأخبر فلافيا انني سأترك سترلسو للذهاب للصيد. سألتني بهدوء: **"لذلك تفضل أن تصطاد الحيوانات على أن تقوم بواجباتك في العاصمة؟"** فشرحت لها: **"الشيء الذي سأصطاده هو حيوان كبير جدا، لأنني سوف أصطاد مايكل"**. بدت الأميرة قلقة للغاية وقالت: **"سوف يكون هذا خطيراً!"** **"إن لم أعود، يجب أن تصبحي ملكة مكانى."** ثم وقفت .. وقالت: **"أنا لا أعرف حقاً ما يجري، ولكني سأفعل كل ما هو في صالح روريتانيا، فإذا كان ذلك يعني أن أصبح ملكة، فليكن."** قلت: **"شكراً لك ونحن نأمل أن ذلك ليس ضرورياً."** كنت أعرف، مع ذلك، أن هذا كان أكثر من ممكن.

3. About eight kilometres from Zenda, on the opposite side of the town to where the castle stands, there is a leafy wood on a low hill. On top of the hill is a large, modern country house called Tarlenheim which belongs to a relative of Fritz. He does not often visit the house, so when Fritz asked if we could use it for a hunting trip, he happily agreed.

على بعد حوالي ثمانية كيلومترات من زندا، وعلى الجانب الآخر من المدينة إلى حيث تقع القلعة، هناك غابة مورقة على تل منخفض. وعلى قمة التل يوجد بيت ريفي حديث وكبير يسمى تارلينهيم والذي ينتمي إلى أحد أقارب فريتز والذي كان لا يزور البت في كثير من الأحيان ، حتى انه عندما سنله فريتز عما اذا كان يمكننا استخدامه لرحلة صيد، وافق دون تردد.

4. So the next day, Sapt, Fritz and I set off from the capital and arrived at the country house at about midday, with a large party of servants and ten brave and strong gentlemen that I trusted. We had told these men that Michael had tried to kill me and that a good friend of the King's was held prisoner in the castle. They knew it was our job to set him free, and being brave and loyal, they did not need to ask any more questions. However, it did not take long for Duke Michael to hear about our arrival, and after only an hour, we were visited by three of his famous Six Men: the Ruritanians Lauengram, Krafstein and Rupert Hentzau. I am sure they knew that we were not really there to hunt animals but had a much bigger plan.

لذلك، في اليوم التالي، أنطلقنا ان وسابت وفريتز من العاصمة ووصلنا إلى المنزل الريفي نحو منتصف النهار، وكان معنا مجموعة كبيرة من الخدم وعشرة من الرجال الشجعان والاقوياء الذين أثق بهم، وقد أخبرنا هؤلاء الرجال أن مايكل حاول قتلي وأن صديق مقرب من الملك تم سجنه في القلعة، وعلم الرجال ان مهمتنا هي اطلاق سراحه، ولأنهم شجعان ومخلصين فلم يلقنوا إلى طرح أسئلة أكثر. ومع ذلك، لم يمر وقتا طويلا حتى سمع الدوق مايكل عن وصولنا، وبعد ساعة فقط، وقام بزيارتنا ثلاثة من رجاله الستة المشهورون وهم الروريتانيون: لوينجرام وكرافستين وروبرت هنتزو، وكنت واثقا من أنهم يعرفون أننا لم نكن هناك حقا لاصطياد الحيوانات ولكن لدينا خطة أكبر من ذلك بكثير.

5. The youngest and strongest of the three, Rupert Hentzau, told us how sorry the Duke was that we could not stay in his mansion, but unfortunately the Duke and many of his servants had a dangerous illness, so it was best if we stayed away. His speech was formal and polite, but I did not believe a word he said. **"I'm sorry to hear this,"** I said to them. **"I hope my brother feels better soon. And what of your friends De Gautet, Bersonin and Detchard? I heard that Detchard was injured?"**

Rupert smiled at me and said, **"You needn't worry, Detchard will be fine."**

**"Good. Perhaps you would like to stay and eat with us?"** I said.

**"You're very kind,"** said Rupert, **"but unfortunately we have important duties and need to get back to at the castle."** **"Of course you do,"**

I laughed. **"Thank you for coming. I look forward to seeing you all again."** When they had gone, Sapt said, **"That Rupert's the worst criminal of them all!"**

اخبرنا أصغر الثلاثة وأقواهم ، روبرت هنتزو، كيف كان الدوق مستاءاً أننا لم نستطع الإقامة في قصره، ولكن لسوء الحظ فالدوق والعديد من خدمه أصيبوا بمرض خطير، لذلك كان أفضل لو بقينا بعيدا. كان خطابه رسمياً ومهذباً، ولكني لم أصدق أي كلمة مما قال. قلت له: "أنا آسف لسماع هذا، أمل أن أخي يشعر على نحو أفضل في وقت قريب. ولكن ماذا عن اصدقائك : دى جوتيت ودى تشارد وبيرسونين؟ سمعت أن دى تشارد أصيب؟" ابتسم روبرت في وجهي، وقال: "لا داعي للقلق، سوف يكون دى تشارد على ما يرام." فقلت: "جيد، ربما كنت ترغب في البقاء وتناول الطعام معنا؟" فقال روبرت: "أنت رفيق جدا، ولكن للأسف لدينا واجبات مهمة ونحتاج ان نعود الى القلعة." فضحكت وقلت: "بالطبع ستفعل ذلك، شكرا لكم على حضوركم، وأتطلع إلى رؤيتكم جميعاً مرة أخرى." وقال سابت عندما ذهبوا: "روبرت هذا هو أسوأ هؤلاء المجرمين!"

6. That evening, I set off for Zenda with Fritz. Our journey, we knew, could be a dangerous one, but my face was covered and we felt safe because there were many people on the roads. We did not go near the

castle, however, but went to the inn where I had stayed on my first night in Ruritania. **"I've been here before,"** I told Fritz.

**"Won't they recognise you, then?"** he said.

**"Of course. Just do as I say and everything will be fine."**

في ذلك المساء، أنطلقت الى زندا مع فريتز . وكانت رحلتنا، كما نعرف، يمكن أن تكون خطيرة، ولكني قمت بتغطية وجهي وشعرنا بالأمان لأن الكثير من الناس كانوا في الطرقات، ومع هذا نحن لم نذهب بالقرب من القلعة، ولكن ذهبنا إلى الفندق الريفي حيث كنت قد قضيت ليلتي الأولى في روريتانيا. قلت لفريتز: "لقد كنت هنا من قبل" فقال: "ألن يتعرفوا عليك؟" فقلت: "بالطبع، فقط افعل كما أقول لك وكل شيء سيكون على ما يرام".

7. I kept the coat over my face as we entered the inn and we asked to have a meal in a quiet room at the back. When the owner's daughter brought us our food, I uncovered my face so she could see me. **"You're the King!"** she cried, almost dropping our plates.

**"I remember you when you stayed with us. I told my mother you weren't really an Englishman and that you were the King! I'm sorry if we said anything bad when you stayed with us."**

**"I'll forgive you if you promise to help us,"** I said. I explained that I wanted to see Johann. **"He never comes here any more,"** she explained.

**"He works at the castle now."**

**"But you're still friends and you must ask to see him,"** I told her. **"Tell him to meet you tomorrow night at ten o'clock, then bring him to our house. And tell no one that you've seen the King. Do you understand?"**

**"You won't hurt him, will you, sir?"**

**"Not if he does as we ask,"** I promised.

كان معطفي على وجهي عندما دخلنا النزل وطلبنا تناول وجبة في غرفة هادئة في الخلف، عندما جاءت ابنة صاحبة النزل بطعامنا كشفت وجهي حتى تتمكن من رؤيتي. فصرخت: "أنت الملك!"، و تقريرا اسقطت الاطباء، وقالت: "أذكر عندما بقيت معنا. قلت لأمي أنك لم تكن حقا رجل إنجليزي وانك كنت ملك! أنا أسفة إذا قلنا أي شيء سيئ عندما بقيت معنا." فقلت: "سوف أغفر لك إذا وعدت أن تساعدنا". وأوضحت أنني أريد أن أرى جوهان. فأوضحت: "إنه لم يعد يأتي أبدا الى هنا، انه يعمل في القلعة الآن". قلت لها: "لكنكم ما زلتם أصدقاء ويجب عليك أن تطلبى رؤيته، قول له أن يأتي للقاءك ليلة الغد في الساعة العاشرة، ثم أحضره الى منزلنا، ولا تخبري أحدا أنك قد رأيت الملك، هل تفهمين؟" "أنت لن تضره، أليس كذلك يا سيدي؟" فوعدتها: "لن أفعل ذلك اذا فعل ما أطلبه".

8. She agreed happily, and after our meal we returned to Tarlenheim late that night. As we got off our horses, Sapt ran out of the house and cried, **"So you're safe!"**

**"We're fine. Why shouldn't we be?"**

**"It seems that it's dangerous to ride in this area unless you're in a large group. One of our men, Bernenstein, went out alone in the woods today. He saw three men in the trees and one shot him. He's upstairs in bed with a bullet in his arm. The next bullet could be for you."**

لقد وافقت وهي سعيدة، وبعد وجبتنا عدنا إلى تارلينهيم في وقت متأخر من تلك الليلة. وعندما كنا ننزل من على خيولنا، خرج سابت مسرعا من المنزل وصاح: "إذا أنتم في أمان!" فقلت: "نحن بخير، فلماذا لا نكون؟" فقال: "يبدو أن ركوب الخيل في هذا المنطقة أمر خطير إلا إذا كنت في مجموعة كبيرة. فقد ذهب احد رجالنا، وهو بيرنستين، وحده في الغابة اليوم، ورأى ثلاثة رجال بين الأشجار واحدهم أطلق عليه النار. انه بالطابق العلوي في السرير وهناك عيار ناري في ذراعه. الرصاصة القادمة قد تكون لك".

9. We thought that we would be safe in the country house, but I was wrong. The next day, I was resting in the living room when Rupert visited the house alone. **"I have a message for you, Rassendyll,"** he said. **"If you do not know how to address the King, my brother must find another messenger,"** I replied coldly.

**"Why do you continue to pretend?"** he laughed. **"We all know who you are."** **"But you can't say that in public, can you? Because then people would know you've kidnapped the real King. You know the game's not finished yet, and until it is, I will choose my own name,"**

I said. **"So, what is your message?"**

**"The Duke offers you more than I would. He offers you a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces."**

**"Tell the Duke that I refuse his generous offer. How's his prisoner, by the way?"**

**"He's still alive,"** said Rupert. **"Good, now go from here, while you can,"** I said.

كنا نظن أننا سنكون في مأمن في المنزل الريفي، ولكن كنت على خطأ، ففي اليوم التالي، كنت أستريح في غرفة المعيشة عندما زار روبرت المنزل وحده. وقال: "لدي رسالة لك، يا راسندل" فأجبت ببرود: "إذا كنت لا تعرف كيفية التعامل مع الملك فعلى أخي أن يجد رسولاً آخر" فضحك وقال: "لماذا الاستمرار في التظاهر؟ ونحن نعلم جميعاً من أنت". فقلت: "لكن لا يمكن أن تقول هذا على الملأ، أليس كذلك؟ لأن الناس سوف تعرف عند ذلك انكم قد اختطفتم الملك الحقيقي، أنت تعرف ان اللعبة لم تنته بعد، وحتى يتم ذلك سوف تختار اسمي، ولكن، ما هي رسالتكم؟" "الدوق يقدم لك أكثر مما اتوقع، انه يعرض عليك رحلة آمنة الى الحدود و مليون قطعة من الذهب". قلل للدوق أنني أرفض عرضه السخي. كيف حال سجينه، بالمناسبة؟" فقال روبرت: "ما زال حياً". فقلت: "ممتاز، الآن أذهب من هنا حيثما استطعت".

**10.** Rupert gave me a cold look and asked his servant to prepare his horse. I followed him out of the house, and just as he was about to climb on his horse, he stopped and said, **"Let's shake hands."** He stepped nearer to me and suddenly **stabbed** me in the shoulder with his knife. I cried out, but Rupert rode off fast before I could do anything.

نظر روبرت لي نظرة باردة وطلب من خادمه أن يعد حصانه، اصطحبته الى خارج المنزل، وبينما كان على وشك الصعود على حصانه، توقف، وقال: 'دعنا نتصافح' خطى ناحيتي وفجأة طعنني في كتفي بسكين، صرخت، ولكن روبرت هرب بسرعة قبل أن أتمكن من فعل أي شيء.

**11.** Although my shoulder hurt, I was lucky it was not a bad injury, though I was angry at letting myself fall for such a trick. I was put to bed and told to sleep, which I did for several hours. When I woke up, it was dark and I found Fritz beside me. **"The doctor says your arm will soon be better,"** he said. **"And the good news is that your plan has worked, for the girl's brought Johann to the house. He's downstairs right now, and the strange thing is that I think Johann's happy to be here,"** said Fritz. **"He seems to know that if Michael's plan is successful, he'll be in trouble because he knows too much."**

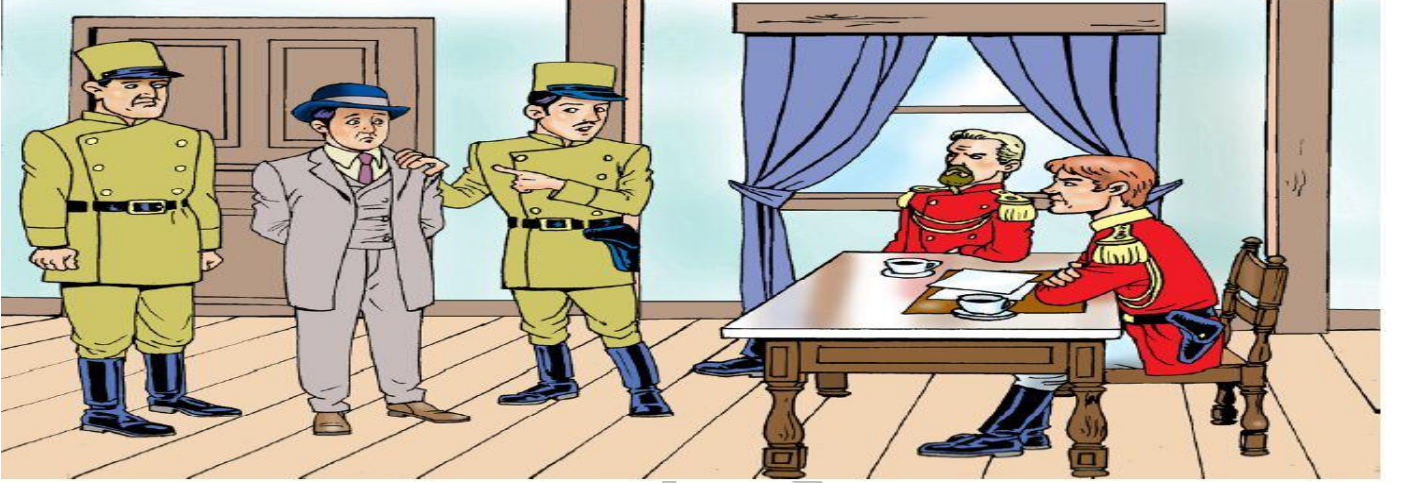
على الرغم من أن كتفي كان يؤلمني، كنت محظوظاً أنها لم تكن إصابة سيئة، ولكنني كنت غاضباً انني تركت نفسي أسقط في خدعة من هذا القبيل. خُملت الى السرير وطلبوا مني ان انام، وهو ما قمت به لعدة ساعات. وعندما استيقظت، كان المكان مظلماً ووجدت فريتز بجانبني. فقال: "يقول الطبيب ان ذراعك سيصبح أفضل قريباً، والخبر السار هو أن خطتك بدأت تعمل، فالفتاة قد جلبت جوهان الى المنزل. انه بالطابق السفلي في الوقت الحالي، والغريب في الأمر أنني أعتقد ان جوهان سعيد لوجوده هنا، يبدو انه يعلم انه اذا نجحت خطة مايكل، سوف يكون هو في مأزق لأنه يعرف أشياء أكثر من اللازم".

**12.** This made me think that Johann would be more useful to us than I had first thought. Surely with the right encouragement, he would make the perfect spy for us? I went downstairs and asked to see Johann. The guards had brought him in with his hands tied behind his back. I sat him down in a chair, where he sat looking sad and afraid. As we talked to him, we understood that Johann was a weak man but not a **wicked** one. He said he worked for Michael because he was afraid of him not because he liked him, and he seemed happy to tell me Michael's secrets.



جعلني هذا أعتقد أن جوهان سيكون أكثر فائدة بالنسبة لنا مما كنت أعتقد في البداية. وبالتأكيد مع الترتيب المناسب، سيكون الجاسوس المثالي بالنسبة لنا؟ ذهبت للطابق السفلي وطلبت أن أرى جوهان. وكان الحراس أتوا به ويدها مكبلتان خلف ظهره. أجلسته على كرسي، حيث جلس وهو يبدو عليه الحزن والخوف. وعندما تحدثنا إليه، فهمنا أن جوهان كان رجلاً ضعيفاً ولكنه ليس شريراً. وقال إنه كان يعمل لمايكل لأنه كان يخافه ليس لأنه يحبه، ويذا سعيداً وهو يخبرني أسرار مايكل.

**13.** He told us that there were two small rooms inside the castle, which you could only reach by crossing the drawbridge. The rooms were cut into the rock below the ground. One room had no windows, so it was always lit by candles. Behind it was a second room with a small window, where the King was kept in chains. From the window, a large stone pipe led down to the castle moat. The first room was always guarded by three of the Six Men. They were told that, if some people attacked the first room and it



was in danger of being taken, Detchard should go into the other room and kill the King. The body would then be put down the pipe and the weight of his chains would keep the body under water. Calling out to the other men, Detchard would then escape down the same pipe and swim across the moat. The other two men would then follow him and the Duke's horses would take them to safety. So anyone searching the castle would find nothing: just an empty room.

قال لنا ان هناك غرفتين صغيرتين داخل القلعة، والتي يمكن أن تصلهما فقط عن طريق عبور الجسر المتحرك. وهي غرف منحوتة في الصخر تحت الأرض. واحدة منهما ليس لها نوافذ، لذلك كانت مضادة دائماً بالشموع. وخلفها كان هناك غرفة ثانية بنافذة صغيرة، حيث كانوا يحتفظون بالملك مقيداً في سلاسل. ومن النافذة كان هناك ماسورة كبيرة من الحجارة تؤدي الى خندق القلعة. كانت الغرفة الأولى دائماً تخضع لحراسة ثلاثة من الرجال الستة. قيل لهم أنه إذا هاجم بعض الناس الغرفة الأولى وكان هناك خطر ان يتم الاستيلاء عليها، يجب ان يذهب دى تشارد الى الغرفة الأخرى ويقتل الملك. وبعد ذلك يوضع الجسم لينزل من خلال الماسورة وتقل الأغلال سيبقى الجسم تحت الماء. ثم ينادى على باقي الرجال، ويهرب دى تشارد إلى أسفل الماسورة ويسبح عبر نفس الخندق. ثم يتبعه الرجلين وخيول الدوق سوف تأخذهم إلى بر الأمان. لذلك فإن أي شخص يقوم بتفتيش القلعة لن يجد شيئاً: مجرد غرفة فارغة.

**14. "What if many men attacked the castle?"** I asked.

**"They have another plan,"** he explained. **"If the castle's attacked by a large group of soldiers, they would do the same thing, but one of the Six Men would take the King's place. So when Michael arrived at the castle, he could say that he was only keeping one of the Six Men as prisoner because he'd been rude to Antoinette de Mauban. No one would believe that the King was ever there."**

**"It's a very clever plan,"** said Sapt angrily. **"It means that if we attack the castle quietly and secretly, or openly with a great army, the**

**King will still be dead before we can save him. Rassendyll, I think that this time next year, you'll still be King."**

سألته: "ماذا لو هاجم العديد من الرجال القلعة؟" فشرح لي: "لديهم خطة أخرى، إذا هوجمت القلعة من قبل مجموعة كبيرة من الجنود، فإنهم سيفعلون الشيء نفسه، ولكن واحد من الست رجال سيحل محل الملك. لذلك عندما يصل مايكل إلى القلعة سيقول انه هو كان فقط متحفظاً على واحد من الست رجال كسجين لأنه كان وقحا مع أنطوانيت دي مويان، و عندها لا يمكن لأحد أن يعتقد أن الملك كان هناك أي وقت مضى" فقال سابت بغضب: "إنها خطة ذكية جداً، وهذا يعني أنه إذا هاجمنا القلعة في هدوء وسرية، أو في العلن ومعنا جيش عظيم فإن الملك سيكون ميتاً قبل أن نتمكن من انقاذه، أسمع يا راسندل أعتقد أن في هذا الوقت من العام القادم، سوف تكون لا تزال الملك."

15. My pulse quickened at the thought of remaining King forever. But without proving that Michael had killed the real King, the Duke would still be there, in his castle, waiting for his opportunity to take my place. I would never be safe. **"Does the King know about Michael's plan?"** I asked Johann.

**"Yes, and so does my brother, Max. He helped to put up the pipe to the prison window. It's not easy to sleep at the Castle of Zenda because no one feels safe. Everyone in it is a criminal, except the King."**

كان نبض قلبي يتسارع عندما افكر اننى سابقى الملك إلى الأبد، لكن من دون إثبات أن مايكل كان قد قتل الملك الحقيقي، فإن الدوق سيظل هناك في قصره، في انتظار فرصته لاتخاذ مكاني، لن أكون في أمان أبداً" سألت جوهان: "هل يعرف الملك شيئاً عن خطة مايكل؟" فقال: "نعم، وكذلك أخى ماكس فقد ساعد في وضع الماسورة عند نافذة السجن. ليس من السهل ان تنام في قلعة زندا لأنه لا أحد يشعر بالأمان. الجميع هناك مجرمون، باستثناء الملك."

16. **"Thank you, Johann,"** I said to him. **"You can go back to the castle now. If anyone asks you if there is a prisoner in the castle, you can say there is. But if anyone asks you who the prisoner is, do not answer. We can help you if you keep your promises, otherwise you'll never be safe again."** Johann bowed to me as he left. We hoped he could be trusted.

**"So, what are we going to do now?"** asked Sapt. I thought long and hard. **"There are two ways in which the King can come out of Zenda alive,"** I said. **"One is if we have a miracle, and the other is if one of the Duke's men betrays him."**

قلت له: "شكراً لك، يا جوهان، يمكنك العودة إلى القلعة الآن. إذا سألك أي شخص لو ان هناك سجين في القلعة، يمكنك أن تقول نعم هناك، ولكن إذا سألك أي شخص من هو السجين فلا تجب، ونحن يمكن أن نساعدك إذا وفيت بوعدك، وإلا فلن تكون في أمان مرة أخرى." انحنى جوهان أمامي وهو يغادر، كنا نأمل ان يصح وثوقنا به، سألتني سابت: "إذاً، ما الذي سنفعله الآن؟" فكرت طويلاً وبجدية ثم قلت: "هناك طريقتان لإخراج الملك من زندا حياً، الأولى هو اذا كان لدينا معجزة، والأخرى هي إذا كان أحد الرجال الدوق على استعداد ان يخونه."

## **Questions & Answers**

1- **Why did Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz decide to make a move against Michael?** يتخذ إجراء ضد

- Because the King was imprisoned محبوس and they wanted to save him.

2- **Who did King Rassendyll trust to keep the future of Ruritania safe?**

- He trusted Marshal Strakencz.

3- **When could Duke Michael legally become King?**

- He could only legally become King if he married Princess Flavia.

- 4- What must Marshal Strakencz promise King Rassendyll to do?**  
- He must promise to protect Princess Flavia from Duke Michael.
- 5- What reason did Rassendyll give Princess Flavia for leaving Strelsau? What did he ask her to do if he didn't come back?**  
- He told her he was going to hunt a big animal — Michael. He told her she must become Queen if he didn't return.
- 6- What did Rassendyll ask Flavia to do if he didn't come back from Zenda?**  
- He asked her to become the Queen of Ruritania.
- 7- Who accompanied King Rassendyll to Zenda?**  
- Sapt, Fritz, a large party مجموعة of servants and ten brave and strong men that he trusted accompanied him to Zenda.
- 8- What did Rassendyll tell his men about their mission?**  
- He told them that Michael tried to kill the King and that a good friend of the King's was held prisoner in the Castle and it was their job to set him free.
- 9- Where did Rassendyll and his men stay for their hunting trip? Where was it and who did it belong to?**  
- They stayed in a country house called Tarlenheim. It belonged to a relative of Fritz. It was on a hill تل on the opposite side الجانب المقابل of the town of Zenda from the castle.
- 10- Who visited King Rassendyll at the country house of Tarlenheim?**  
- Three of Michael's Six Men visited him.
- 11- According to Sapt, who was the worst criminal of Michael's Six Men?**  
- Rupert Hentzau was the worst criminal of them all
- 12- What reason does Duke Michael give for not visiting "King" Rassendyll or inviting him to his castle?**  
- He says that he and some servants have a serious sickness.
- 13- Why did Rassendyll and Fritz go to the inn at Zenda? Who did they talk to there and what did they say?**  
- They went to meet Johann. They talked to the innkeeper's daughter and asked her to have Johann meet them the next night.
- 14- Who was Bernenstein?**  
- He was a trusted محل ثقة gentleman who helped to save the King.



**15- What happened to Bernenstein while Fritz and Rassendyll were out?**

- He was shot in the arm while he was out in the woods.

**16- Rupert Hentzau told Rassendyll about Michael's new offer to him. Illustrate.**

- Michael offered Rassendyll a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces.

**17- How was Rupert Hentzau able to trick يخدع Rudolf Rassendyll and injure him at Tarlenheim?**

- He pretended that he wanted to shake hands with يصافح Rassendyll. He stepped خطا nearer to بالقرب من Rassendyll and suddenly stabbed him طعنه in the shoulder with his knife.

**18- What message did Rupert Hentzau bring the next day? How did Rassendyll reply? What happened when Rupert was leaving?**

- The Duke offered Rassendyll a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces. Rassendyll refused. As Rupert was leaving, he stabbed Rassendyll in the shoulder with a knife.

**19- What do they learn from Johann?**

- They learn where the King is being kept in the castle and the Duke's plans.

**20- Why would Johann be in trouble if Michael's plan to kill the King succeeded?**

- He would be in trouble because he knew too much.

**21- How could Johann be very useful to Rassendyll?**

- As Johann worked at the Castle of Zenda, he would make the perfect spy for Rassendyll.

**22- According to Johann, why did he work for Michael?**

- He worked for Michael because he was afraid of him not because he liked him.

**23- Where was the King kept at the Castle of Zenda?**

- The King was kept in chains سلاسل in a room with a small window.

**24- What would happen if some people attacked the Castle?**

- Detchard would kill the King and the body would be put down the pipe and the weight of his chains would keep the body under water.

**25- What was the plan if Michael's men were attacked? How would they kill the King and what would they do with the body?**

- They would kill the King and then put him into the pipe. The chains would keep the body under the water of the moat خندق مائي. The guards could then go out the same pipe and swim across the moat to escape.

**26- What would happen if the Castle was attacked by a large group of soldiers?**

- Michael's men would kill the King and put him down the pipe leading to the moat. One of Michael's men would take the King's place. So, it would seem that Michael was keeping one of the Six Men as a prisoner because he had been rude to Antoinette de Mauban. No one would believe that the King was ever there.

**27- Why do they send Johann back to the castle?**

- The Duke would look for him if he were missing. They also hope they can trust him and get more information from him.

**28- According to Rassendyll, there were two ways in which the King could come out of Zenda alive. Illustrate.**

- One way was to have a miracle and the other way was if one of the Duke's men betrayed him.

## **Quotations**

**1- "You must promise that you'll protect Princess Flavia from the Duke."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rudolf Rassendyll said this to Marshal Strakencz.

**2- Why do you think Princess Flavia needed protection from the duke?**

- The Duke could only legally become King if he married the princess as his mother wasn't royal. The Duke might force the Princess to marry him.

**3- What was the addressed person's job?**

- He was an important person in the Ruritania army.

**2- "The writing's a little different from your usual. I hope people know it's a real order from the King."**

**1- Who says this to Rassendyll (the King)?**

- Marshal Strakencz says this.

**2- What does he think is the reason that the handwriting is different? What is the real reason?**

- He thinks it is different because the King has injured his hand. The real reason is that Rassendyll is not the real King.

**3- Why is it important that the handwriting be the same?**

- So that people will know that it is a real order from the King.

**3- "So you'd prefer to hunt animals than do your duties in the capital?"**

**1- Who says this to Rassendyll?**

- Princess Flavia.

**2- When does the person say this?**

- The day after the ball, when Rassendyll is saying goodbye to go to Zenda to hunt Michael.

**3- What "animal" is Rassendyll going to hunt?**

- He's going to hunt Duke Michael.

**4- "I don't really know what's going on, but I'll do whatever is right for Ruritania."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Princess Flavia said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- When was this said?**

- This was said when Rudolf Rassendyll told Flavia that he was going to hunt Michael and that if he didn't come back, Flavia would become the Queen of Ruritania.

**3- When could Duke Michael legally become king?**

- He could legally become King if he married the Princess.

**5- "And what of your friends De Gautet, Bersonin and Detchard? I heard that Detchard was injured."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rudolf Rassendyll said this to Rupert Hentzau.

**2- When was this said?**

- This was said when Rupert Hentzau went to Tarlenheim to see Rudolf Rassendyll.

**3- Where and when was Detchard injured?**

- He was injured at the summer house when Rudolf Rassendyll shot him as Michael's men were trying to kill Rassendyll.

**6- "That Rupert is the worst criminal of them all."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Colonel Sapt said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- Who was Rupert?**

- He was one of Michael's Six Men.

**3- Why did the speaker believe that Michael's men were criminals?**

- They were loyal to Michael. They would do whatever Michael asked them to do. They would even kill for Michael.

**7- "He never comes here anymore. He works at the Castle now."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- The hotel owner's daughter said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- Who does "he" refer to?**

- It refers to Johann Holf.

**3- What did the addressed person want the speaker to do?**

- He wanted her to bring Johann to him because he wanted Johann to work as a spy for him.

**8- "He's upstairs in bed with a bullet in his arm. The next bullet could be for you."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Colonel Sapt said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- Who was the speaker talking about? Who shot that person?**

- He was talking about Bernenstein, one of Rassendyll's men. One of Michael's men shot

**3- Who do you think would try to kill the addressed person? Why?**

- Michael and his men would try to kill Rudolf Rassendyll as this was part of Michael's plan to become the King.

**9- "I have a message for you, Rassendyll."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rupert Hentzau said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- Where were they?**

- They were at Tarlenheim.

**3- What was the message?**

- Michael offered Rassendyll a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces.

**10- "If you do not know how to address the King, my brother must find another messenger."**

**1- Who does, Rassendyll say this to?**

- Rassendyll says this to Rupert Hentzau.

**2- Where are they?**

- They are at Tarlenheim.

**3- Why does he say this?**

- He says this because Hentzau has addressed him as "Rassendyll".

**11- "Why do you continue to pretend? We all know who you are."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rupert Hentzau said this to Rudolf Rassendyll.

**2- Why did the speaker say this?**

- He said this because Rassendyll wanted Rupert to address him as a King.

**3- What was the purpose of the speaker's visit?**

- Rupert brought a message from Michael to Rassendyll. Michael offered Rassendyll a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces.

**12- "You know the game's not finished yet, and until it is, I will choose my own name."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rudolf Rassendyll said this to Rupert Hentzau.

**2- When was this said?**

- This was said when Rupert went to see Rudolf Rassendyll at Tarlenheim to give him a message from Michael.

**3- Why did the speaker say the game hasn't finished?**

- Rupert asked Rudolf Rassendyll to stop pretending that he was the King as everybody knew who he was. Rudolf believed that Michael couldn't say in public that Rudolf Rassendyll wasn't the King as people would know then that he had kidnapped the King.

**13- "The Duke offers you more than I would. He offers you a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rupert Hentzau said this to Rassendyll.

**2- Why did the Duke want that person to leave the country?**

- He wanted him to leave the country so that he could become King after getting rid of the King.

**3- Did the addressed person accept or refuse the offer?**

- He refused the offer.

**14- "Tell the Duke that I refuse his generous offer. How's his prisoner by the way?"**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rudolf Rassendyll said this to Rupert Hentzau.

**2- What was that offer the speaker refused?**

- Duke Michael offered Rassendyll a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces.

**3- Who was the prisoner and where was he?**

- The prisoner was King Rudolf Elphberg and he was imprisoned at the Castle of Zenda.

**15- "Good, now go from here, while you can."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rudolf Rassendyll said this to Rupert Hentzau.

**2- What does the phrase "while you can" mean?**

- It means that if Rupert didn't do away, Rassendyll would kill him.

**3- What terrible thing did the addressed person do before riding off?**

- He pretended that he wanted to shake hands with Rassendyll, and then he suddenly stabbed him in the shoulder with his knife.

**16- "They have another plan."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Johann said this to Rassendyll

**2- Who were they talking about?**

- They were talking about the Duke and his men.

**3- What plan was the speaker referring to?**

- If the castle's attacked by a large group of soldiers, Michael's men would kill the King and put him down the pipe leading to the moat. One of Michael's men would take the King's place. So, it would seem that Michael was keeping one of the Six Men as a prisoner because he had been rude to Antoinette de Mauban. No one would believe that the King was ever there.

**17- "Rassendyll, I think that this time next year, you'll still be King."**

**1- Who says this?**

- Colonel Sapt.

**2- What has he just heard?**

- He has just heard the Duke's plan for killing the King and hiding the body.

**3- Why does he think Rassendyll will still be King after a year?**

- Because the Duke's plan is very clever and he will kill the King whether he is attacked by a small group or a large one.

**18- "Does the King know about Michael's plan?"**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rassendyll said this to Johann.

**2- Did the king know about Michael's plan?**

- Yes, he did.

**3- According to the speaker, there were two ways in which the King could come out of Zenda alive. What were they?**

- One way was to have a miracle and the other way was if one of the Duke's men betrayed يخون him.

**19- "We can help you if you keep your promises, otherwise you'll never be safe again."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rudolf Rassendyll said this to Johann Holf.

**2- Which promises was the addressed person asked to keep?**

- Johann promised Rudolf Rassendyll to help him rescue the King, Rudolf Elphberg, who was held prisoner at the Castle of Zenda.

**3- Why did the addressed person agree to help the speaker?**

- Johann agreed to help Rassendyll because he didn't like Duke Michael as he thought that the Duke and his men were criminals.

**20- "There are two ways in which the King can come out of Zenda alive."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rassendyll said this to Sapt.

**2- When was this said?**

- This was said when Sapt asked what they were going to do after knowing the Duke's plans to get rid of the king.

**3- Mention the two ways in which the King can come out of Zenda alive?**

- One way was to have a miracle and the other way was if one of the Duke's men betrayed him.

**Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:**

- 1- ☒ Rassendyll had to trust **Rose** to keep the future of Ruritania safe.  
☒ Rassendyll had to trust **Marshal Strakencz** to keep the future of Ruritania safe.
- 2- ☒ Marshal Strakencz promised to protect **Countess Amelia** from the Duke.  
☒ Marshal Strakencz promised to protect **Princess Flavia** from the Duke.
- 3- ☒ Duke **Burlesdon** cannot legally become King unless he marries Princess Flavia.  
☒ Duke **Michael** cannot legally become King unless he marries Princess Flavia.
- 4- ☒ Rassendyll's writing was **the same as** the real King's writing.  
☒ Rassendyll's writing was **different from** the real King's writing.
- 5- ☒ **Princess Flavia** wrote some orders for Marshal Strakencz.  
☒ **Rassendyll** wrote some orders for Marshal Strakencz.
- 6- ☒ Rassendyll said that he was going to hunt a very big animal, by which he meant **Colonel Sapt**.  
☒ Rassendyll said that he was going to hunt a very big animal, by which he meant **Duke Michael**.
- 7- ☒ **Fritz** owned the country house called Tarlenheim.  
☒ **Fritz's relative** owned the country house called Tarlenheim.
- 8- ☒ **Detchard**, Sapt, Fritz and ten gentlemen went to Tarlenheim.  
☒ **Rassendyll**, Sapt, Fritz and ten gentlemen went to Tarlenheim.
- 9- ☒ The ten brave and strong gentlemen knew that Rassendyll **was not** the real King.  
☒ The ten brave and strong gentlemen know that Rassendyll **was** the real King.
- 10- ☒ Rassendyll told his men that **Fritz** had tried to kill him.  
☒ Rassendyll told his men that **Duke Michael** had tried to kill him.
- 11- ☒ Sapt believed that **Detchard** was the worst criminal of Michael's Six Men.  
☒ Sapt believed that **Rupert Hentzau** was the worst criminal of Michael's Six Men.
- 12- ☒ Rassendyll took **Sapt** to dine at the small hotel he stayed at on his first night in Ruritania.  
☒ Rassendyll took **Fritz** to dine at the small hotel he stayed at on his first night in Ruritania.
- 13- ☒ The innkeeper's **son** said that she thought Rassendyll was the King when he stayed with them.  
☒ The innkeeper's **daughter** said that she thought Rassendyll was the King when he stayed with them.
- 14- ☒ Rassendyll asked Fritz to bring **Detchard** to the Tarlenheim country house.  
☒ Rassendyll asked the Fritz to bring **Johann** to the Tarlenheim country house.
- 15- ☒ Bernenstein was shot by the **king's** men while in the woods  
☒ Bernenstein was shot by the **Duke's** men while in the woods
- 16- ☒ Bernenstein was shot in the **shoulder** while in the woods.  
☒ Bernenstein was shot in the **arm** while in the woods.
- 17- ☒ Duke Michael **visited** Rassendyll at Tarlenheim.  
☒ Duke Michael **didn't visit** Rassendyll at Tarlenheim.
- 18- ☒ The Ruritanian **Six** Men visited Rassendyll at Tarlenheim.  
☒ The Ruritanian **three** Men visited Rassendyll at Tarlenheim.

## **Homework ((A))**

### **A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- From whom did Rassendyll ask the Marshall to protect the Princess ?
- 2- Why did the Duke want to marry the Princess?
- 3- What did the Marshall notice when Rassendyll wrote his order?
- 4- Where did Rassendyll ( the pretend king) tell the princess he was going?
- 5- What did Rassendyll ask Flavia to do if he didn't come back?
- 6- Where was the Tarlenheim castle?
- 7- Who did the Tarlenheim house belong to?
- 8- Who did Rassendyll take with him to the Tarlenheim house?
- 9- What did Rassendyll ( the pretend king ) tell those men?
- 10- Show that the men whom the pretend king took with him brave and loyal .
- 11- Who arrived at the Tarlenheim house to visit Rassendyll?
- 12- Why couldn't the Duke host the king ( Rassendyll ) at his mansion?
- 13- What did Rassendyll think of Rupert's talk to him?
- 14- What was Sapt's opinion of Rupert Hentzau ?
- 15- Why did Rassendyll feel safe when he set off for Zenda with Fritz?
- 16- Why did Rassendyll uncover his face in front of the owner's daughter?
- 17- How was the owner's daughter mistaken about Rassendyll ?
- 18- Why did the owner's daughter apologize to Rassendyll?
- 19- What condition did Rassendyll ask her to achieve to forgive her?
- 20- Why did the girl agreed happily to bring Johann to the king ( Rassendyll )?
- 21- Why did it seem dangerous for Rassendyll to ride in that area alone?
- 22- Why was Bernenstein shot?
- 23- Why weren't they safe in the country house ?

### **B) Read the following quotation and answer the questions:**

1- *"You'd prefer to hunt animals than do your duties in the capital. "*

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) What did the speaker blame the listener for?
- c) What did these words show about the speaker ?

2- *"If I don't come, you must become queen for me."*

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) Why might the speaker not come?
- c) Did the other person agree on what was said

3- *"I heard that Detchard was injured. "*

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) When was Detchard injured?
- c) What did the speaker's words aim at ?

4- *"I'm sorry if we said anything bad when you stayed with us."*

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) Why did the speaker apologize?
- c) On what condition would the other person forgive him/her?

5- *"He never comes here any more. He works at the Castle now. "*

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) About whom were they talking?
- c) Why did the other person need him?



### **6-"I have a message for you."**

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) What was in that message?
- c) What was the listener's response?

### **C) Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:**

- 1- Rassendyll told the Princess that he was going to hunt Sapt
- 2- Rassendyll asked the princess to be a king if he didn't return
- 3- The Princess promised to do the right thing for England
- 4- About 12 kilometre from Zenda there was a leafy wood on top of a hill
- 5- The Tarlenheim house belonged to Sapt
- 6- The Tarlenheim house was far from Zenda.
- 7- The Tarlenheim house was on a mountain top
- 8- Rassendyll went to the house with a large party of servants and 15 gentlemen
- 9- Rassendyll told the men that the king was held prisoner
- 10- The three foreigners visited Rassendyll
- 11- Rupert told Rassendyll that the Duke couldn't host him as he was travelling
- 12- Rassendyll asked about the injured De Gautet
- 13- Rassendyll and Sapt went to the inn
- 14- Rassendyll asked the girl to bring him her mother
- 15- Sapt was angry that Rassendyll was safe

## **Homework ((B))**

### **A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Why did Rupert ask Rassendyll to stop pretending ? ( it was a comic scene )
- 2 -Although Rupert knew Rassendyll's game , Rassendyll was confident. Illustrate.
- 3- What was the 2nd offer which Rupert told Rassendyll about?
- 4- Why did Rassendyll refuse the 2nd offer ?
- 5- What would happen if Rassendyll accept the offer ?
- 6- Rupert Hentzau was treacherous غدار and trustless. Explain.
- 7- How was Rassendyll lucky when Rupert stabbed him ?
- 8- Why was Johann happy to be in the country house ( to help Rassendyll ) ?
- 9- Johann was a weak man not a wicked one ,How did that help Rassendyll?
- 10- What did Johan tell them about the real king's place inside the castle?
- 11- How could these rooms be reached ?
- 12- Why was the first room always guarded by three men of the six men?
- 13- Why was there a pipe from the window of the king's room?
- 14- The pipe had many uses for Michael's men. Discuss.
- 15- What was the 2nd plan to get rid of the king if many people attacked the castle?
- 16- Why would one of the six men take the king's place?
- 17- How was Sapt being frustrated by Michael's clever plan?
- 18- Why was Rassendyll's pulse quickened at the thought of remaining king forever?
- 19- Who knew about Michael's plan other than his men?
- 20- What did Johann say about his brother Max?
- 21- Why wasn't it easy to sleep at the Castle of Zenda?
- 22- What orders did Rassendyll give Johann after thanking him?

23- According to Rassendyll how could the king come out of Zenda alive?

**B) Read the following quotation and answer the questions:**

1- *"He never comes here any more. He works at the castle now."*

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) About whom was the speaker talking?
- c) Why did the speaker ask about " he" ?

2- *"Let's shake hands."*

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) Where was the speaker at that time?
- c) What did the speaker do then?

3- *"But you can't say that in public, can you?"*

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) What couldn't the listener say in public??
- c) What criminal act عمل إجرامي did the listener do before leaving?

4- *"They have another plan."*

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) What does " they" refer to ?
- c) What was the other plan?

5- *"We can help you if you keep your promises ,otherwise you will never be safe again."*

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) What promises that the addressee could keep?
- c) Do you think the addressee would be helpful or not?

**C) Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:**

- 1- Bernenstein saw four people in the trees
- 2- The three people shot Bernenstein and he had a bullet in his leg.
- 3- The second bullet could be for Sapt
- 4- Fritz asked Rassendyll to end the pretence as he was known by all
- 5 – Rassendyll told Rupert that they couldn't say that in secret
- 6- Rupert offered Rassendyll 1000 pieces of gold to leave Ruritania.
- 7- Rupert told Rassendyll that the prisoner was dead
- 8- Rupert stabbed Rassendyll with a knife in the chest
- 9- Rassendyll was happy at letting himself fall to such a trick
- 10- Johann was sad to be there in the house of Rassendyll
- 11- Rassendyll wanted Johann to be their spy in the king's palace
- 12- Johann told Rassendyll that the king was imprisoned in the first room.
- 13 The king would be killed and his body would float in the moat.
- 14- Sapt and Rassendyll were surprised by the king's clever plan
- 15- The king could be saved by three ways .

## Chapter 7

injured	مصاب	catch up with	يلحق بـ
woods	الغابة	set the king free	يحرر الملك
was relieved	شعر بالارتياح	bravely	بشجاعة
injury	إصابة	reward	مكافأة / يكافأ
serious	خطير	work against	يعمل ضد
act out a war	يقوم بحرب	murderers	القتلة
hill	تل	messengers	رسل
boots	حذاء	arrange a date	يحدد تاريخ
take off	يخلع (الحذاء)	great joy	فرحة عارمة
stab (him) to death	يطعنه حتى الموت	furious	شديد الغضب
giant pipe	أنبوب ضخمة	at once	في الحال
fasten	يثبت	whichever came first	أيهما حدث أولاً
row	يُجدف بالقارب	act as a spy	يعمل كجاسوس
whistle	يُصفر	remaining	الباقين
several shots	عدة طلقات	cry out for help	يصرخ طلباً للمساعدة
loud cry	صرخة عالية	meanwhile	في أثناء ذلك
towards	تجاه - نحو	weapons	أسلحة
step back	يخطو للخلف	surely	بالتأكيد
pull up	يسحب لأعلى	look ahead	ينظر للأمام
wave a sword	يلوح بالسيف	shortly afterwards	بعد ذلك بفترة قصيرة
heavy hearts	قلوب حزينة	go free	يصبح حراً
at least	على الأقل	surrender	يستسلم
look into the matter	يبحث الأمر أو المسألة	get rid of	يتخلص من

1-The next day, three pieces of news arrived at the Tarlenheim country house where we were staying. The first was that people of Strelsau had heard I was badly injured while I was hunting in the woods, and they were worried. Secondly, the Duke also thought I was badly injured, although he understood better how I had got my injury. I heard this from Johann, who I now trusted and had allowed to go back to Zenda. Thirdly, Marshal Strakencz told me that Princess Flavia had ordered him to take her to see me.

في اليوم التالي، وصل ثلاثة أخبار إلى المنزل الريفي تارلينهيم حيث كنا نقيم، كان الأول أن الناس في سترلسو قد سمعوا أنني أصبت إصابة شديدة بينما كنت أصطاد في الغابة، وأنهم يشعرون بالقلق، وكان الثاني أن الدوق أيضاً اعتقد أنني أصبت بجروح خطيرة، على الرغم من أنه يفهم بشكل كبير كيف حدثت لي هذه الإصابة، سمعت هذا من جوهان، الذي أثق فيه الآن، ولذلك سمحت له أن يعود إلى زندا، أما الثالث فقد أخبرني المارشال ستراكينكز أن الأميرة فلافيا قد أمرته أن يأتي بها لرؤيتي.

2-When the Princess arrived at Tarlenheim, she was relieved to see that my injury was not serious. However, Johann told us shortly afterwards that the King was looking weak and ill, and we realised that we had to do something quickly. We could not wait any longer or he would surely die. It was perhaps the strangest thing in the history of any country, that the King's brother and a pretend King, near a quiet country town during a time of peace, acted out a war for the life of a sick King, with just a few people knowing about it.

عندما وصلت الأميرة الى تارلينهيم، شعرت بالارتياح عندما رأت أن إصابتي لم تكن خطيرة. ولكن جوهان أخبرنا، بعد ذلك بقليل، أن الملك يبدو ضعيفاً ومريضاً، وادركنا أنه علينا أن نفعل شيئاً بسرعة. فنحن لا يمكن أن ننتظر أطول من ذلك وإلا فمن المؤكد أنه سيموت. وربما كان أغرب شيء في تاريخ أي بلد، أن شقيق الملك وشخص يتظاهر أنه الملك، بالقرب من بلدة ريفية هادئة خلال وقت السلم، يخططون لحرب من أجل حياة ملك مريض، مع عدد قليل من الناس يعرفون هذا الأمر

3-That night, after Princess Flavia had gone to bed, I changed my clothes and went outside to join Sapt and Fritz with seven men. We all had weapons and we rode our horses into a wet, windy night, taking a quiet back road towards the Castle of Zenda. It took us about an hour to get there. A few hundred metres from the castle, we asked the seven men to wait with the horses while we continued on foot up the hill to the moat around the castle. Here, Sapt tied a rope to a tree and I took off my boots, using the rope to climb down into the water.

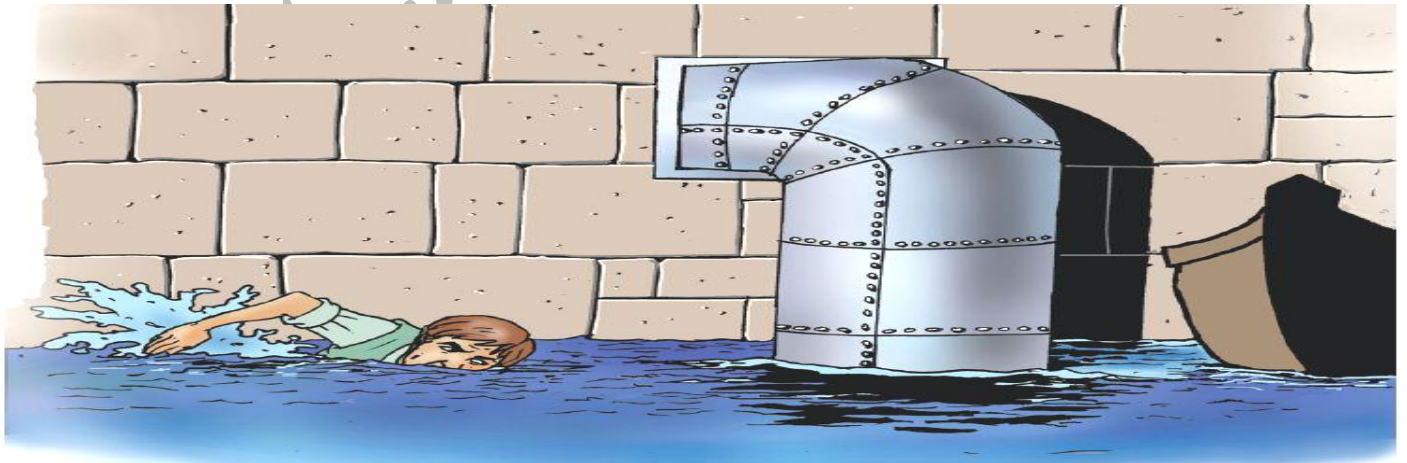
في تلك الليلة، بعدما ذهبت الأميرة فلافيا الى النوم، بدلت ملابسني، وذهبت الى الخارج للانضمام الى ثابت وفريتز مع سبعة رجال. وكنا جميعاً مسلحين، تحركنا بخيولنا في ليلة رطبة وعاصفة، أخذنا طريق خلفي هادئ متجهاً نحو قلعة زيندا. استغرق الأمر منا حوالي ساعة للوصول الى هناك. وعلى بعد بضعة مئات من الأمتار من القلعة، طلبنا من الرجال السبعة الانتظار مع الخيول بينما واصلنا سيرنا على الأقدام من أعلى التل الى الخندق المائي حول القلعة. هنا، ربط ثابت حبل في شجرة، وخلعت حذائي لاستخدام الحبل للنزول الى أسفل في الماء

4-Although the night was windy and wet, it had been a warm and sunny day and the water was not cold, and I swam without difficulty round the castle walls. I could hear voices inside the castle, but it was so dark that I did not think anyone could see me. I remembered what Johann had told me and thought I must now be near to the window to the King's room.

Then I saw the giant pipe that led from his window to the moat, and I was about to go nearer when I heard a noise.

على الرغم من أن الليل كان عاصف ورطب، فقد كان يوماً حاراً ومشمساً لذلك لم يكن الماء بارداً، وسبحت دون صعوبة حول جدران القلعة. كنت أسمع أصواتاً داخل القلعة، ولكن كان المكان مظلماً لذلك لا أعتقد أن أي شخص كان في استطاعته أن يراني. تذكرت ما أخبرني به جوهان واعتقدت أنه من المؤكد أنني الآن بالقرب من نافذة الغرفة التي بها الملك. ثم، رأيت الماسورة العملاقة التي كانت تصل نافذة غرفته بالخندق، وكنت على وشك الإقتراب أكثر عندما سمعت ضوضاء

I now saw there was a boat next to the pipe, and in the boat was a guard carrying a large gun. I went up to the boat as quietly as I could, then I saw



that the guard was Max Holf, the brother of Johann. He was breathing slowly and deeply and I saw that he was asleep. I swam slowly and silently up to him and, though I hated to do it, this was war, so I stabbed him to death.

الآن رأيت ان هناك قارب بجوار الماسورة، وفي القارب كان هناك حارس يحمل بندقية كبيرة. ذهبت الى القارب بهدوء ما أمكنني، ثم رأيت أن الحارس كان ماكس هولف، شقيق جوهان. أنه كان يتنفس ببطء وعمق، وفهمت أنه كان نائماً. سبحت ببطء وفي صمت حتى وصلت عنده، وعلى الرغم من كراهيتي للقيام بذلك، لقد كانت هذه حرب، لذلك طعنته حتى الموت

5-Now I had time to look carefully at the pipe. I soon realised that the bottom of the pipe was not fastened to the wall and I could see light coming



from its far end. I tried to push it, and although the pipe was very heavy, it moved just a little. Then I heard voices: one was the King, and the other was a man with an English accent. It was Detchard.

**"Time for your sleep,"** said the Englishman.

**"Why doesn't my brother kill me now?"** said the King in a weak voice.

**"The Duke doesn't want you to die, not yet anyway. Sleep well!"** said Detchard. Then the light disappeared and I could hear a door being locked.

Now all I could hear was the King, quietly crying.

الآن لدى الوقت لفحص الماسورة بعناية. سرعان ما أدركت أن الجزء السفلي من الماسورة لم يكن مثبتاً في الجدار، واستطعت أن أرى ضوءاً قادمًا من طرفها البعيد. حاولت أن ادفعها، وعلى الرغم من أن الماسورة كانت ثقيلة جداً، فقد تحركت قليلاً فقط. ثم سمعت صوتان: كان أحدهما الملك، والآخر كان رجلاً بلهجة إنجليزية. إنه ديتشارد. قال الإنجليزي: "حان وقت نومك". وقال الملك بصوت ضعيف: "لماذا لا يقتلني أخي الآن؟". فقال ديتشارد: "الدوق لا يريدك أن تموت، ليس بعد على أي حال. نم بشكل جيد!". ثم اختفى الضوء وسمعت صوت بابٍ يقفل. الآن كل ما يمكن أن أسمعه كان الملك، يبكي بصوت منخفض.

6-I realised nothing more could be done that night, so I climbed in the boat with Max dead at the bottom and rowed back to the rope. The wind was blowing hard now, so I did not worry that anyone would hear the boat. When I arrived next to the rope, I tied it round Max's body and asked Sapt to pull it up. Then I climbed back to my friends. Sapt whistled for our seven men to come and get us with their horses, but as they got nearer, we heard several shots and loud cries, and then a voice callout, **"They've got me, Rupert! There are seven of them. Save yourself!"**

أدركت أنه لا يمكنني فعل أي شيء آخر في تلك الليلة، لذلك قفزت في القارب مع ماكس وكان ميتاً فوضعت في الجزء السفلي، وجذفت عائداً مرة أخرى إلى الحبل. كانت الرياح تهب بشدة الآن، حتى أنني لم أقلق من أن أي شخص قد يسمع القارب. عندما وصلت إلى جوار الحبل، ربطته حول جسم ماكس، وطلبت من ثابت أن يسحب القارب لأعلى. ثم تركته عائداً مرة أخرى إلى أصدقائي. قام ثابت بالصفير لرجالنا السبعة ليأتوا ويأخذوننا بخيولهم، ولكن عندما اقتربوا منا سمعنا عدة طلقات وصرخات عالية، وبعد ذلك صاح صوت: "لقد اصابوني يا روبرت! وهناك سبعة منهم. أنقذ نفسك".

7-We were running towards our men when a horse arrived with Rupert Hentzau on it. It was so dark that he did not see us, so I took a large stick and ran forward towards the horse's head. Now, surely we had him! But he was too quick. He waved a sword at me and cut my stick in half. I stepped back, and before we knew it, he had disappeared into the night.

I later found out that Lauengram and Krafstein were both killed by our men, although the fight had cost us three of our own men. We went home with heavy hearts for our friends, worried about the health of the King, and angry that Rupert had escaped.



كنا نجرى نحو رجالنا عندما وصل حصان عليه روبرت هينتزو. وكان المكان مظلماً حتى أنه لم يرانا، فأخذت عصا كبيرة، وركضت إلى الأمام نحو رأس الحصان. الآن، كان من المؤكد أننا تمكنا منه! ولكنه كان سريعاً جداً. فقد لوح بسيفه في وجهي، وقطع عصاي نصفين. أخذت خطوة إلى

الوراء، وقبل ان نعرف ما يحدث، كان قد اختفى في الظلام. اكتشفت فيما بعد أن لوينجرام وكرافستين كلاهما قد قُتل بواسطة رجالنا، على الرغم من أن هذه المعركة قد كلفتنا ثلاثة من رجالنا. ذهبنا الى المنزل بقلوب موجوعة بسبب اصدقائنا، يساورنا القلق بشأن صحة الملك، وغاضبين من أن روبرت قد هرب

8-The next day, I received a visit from the Chief of Police in Strelsau. He told me that the British Ambassador had reported that an Englishman called Rassendyll had disappeared near the town of Zenda. They had found his bags at a nearby train station, and a man called Mr Featherly from Paris believed he was travelling with Madame de Mauban. He asked if I knew the lady.

**"Yes, I do,"** I replied. **"I believe she and her servants were guests of Duke Michael."**

**"I see,"** said the policeman.

**"Go back to Strelsau and tell the Ambassador what you know. I'll look into this for you,"** I told him. **"Return in two weeks and I'll tell you what I've found."** I wanted to have at least two weeks without any more difficult questions. My game had almost been discovered.

وفي اليوم التالي تلقيت زيارة من "رئيس الشرطة" في ستريلسو. واخبرني أن "السفير البريطاني" أبلغه أن رجلاً إنجليزياً يدعى راسينديل قد اختفى قرب مدينة زيندا. وقد وجدوا أمتعتهم في محطة قطار قريبة، وأدعى رجل يدعى السيد فيزيرلي من باريس أنه كان مسافراً مع مدام دي موبان. وسأل إذا كنت أعرف السيدة. فأجبته: "نعم، أعرفها. أعتقد أنها وخدمها كانوا ضيوفاً عند الدوق مايكل". فقال الشرطي: "أفهم ذلك". فقلت له: "عليك ان تعود إلى ستريلسو وتخبر السفير بما تعرفه. سوف ننظر في هذا من أجلك". "سنعود في غضون أسبوعين، وسوف أخبركم ما قد وجدت". أردت أن يكون امامي على الأقل أسبوعين دون أي أسئلة أكثر صعوبة. تقريباً قد أكتشفت لعبتي

9-But with the policeman in town that day, there could be no more fighting around the castle, and Rupert clearly felt safe enough to ride out on his horse. When I saw him, I quickly caught up with him. He looked surprised to see me.

**"How's my brother today?"** I asked him.

**"He's well,"** he replied. **"He hopes he'll soon be in Strelsau."**

**"Rupert, you're young. Why are you doing this? If you let your prisoner go free, I can help you,"** I said to him. **"You don't have to work for my brother."** Rupert looked ahead of him and said nothing for a minute, then he spoke quietly.

الآن لدى الوقت لفحص الماسورة بعناية. سرعان ما أدركت أن الجزء السفلي من الماسورة لم يكن مثبتاً في الجدار، واستطعت ان أرى ضوءاً قادماً من طرفها البعيد. حاولت أن ادفعها، وعلى الرغم من أن الماسورة كانت ثقيلة جداً، فقد تحركت قليلاً فقط. ثم سمعت صوتان: كان أحدهما الملك، والآخر كان رجلاً بلهجة إنجليزية. إنه ديتشارد. قال الإنجليزي: "حان وقت نومك". وقال الملك بصوت ضعيف: "لماذا لا يقتلني أخي الآن؟". فقال ديتشارد: "الدوق لا يريدك أن تموت، ليس بعد على أي حال. نم بشكل جيد!". ثم اختفى الضوء وسمعت صوت باب يقفل. الآن كل ما يمكن أن أسمعه كان الملك، يبكي بصوت منخفض

10-"**You may be right. Attack the castle bravely. I'll tell you when. But Fritz and Sapt must die, and so must Michael and the King. That will leave two men alive: you and me. You'll stay as the King, and I'll have a reward."**

**"Would you really work against Michael?"** I asked him.

**"He's not a good man,"** he replied. **"He makes me angry. I nearly killed him myself last night. Think carefully about my plan."** With that, he rode off down the road.

"قد تكون على حق. هاجم القلعة بشجاعة. سأقول لك متى. ولكن يجب أن يموت فريتز وثابت، وكذلك يجب أن يموت مايكل والملك. وهذا سوف يترك رجلان على قيد الحياة: أنت وأنا. ستبقى انت كملك، وسأخذ أنا المكافأة" سألته: "هل حقاً ستعمل ضد مايكل؟". فأجاب: "انه ليس رجل جيد، أنه يجعلني غاضباً. وكنت على وشك قتله بنفسي الليلة الماضية. فكر بعناية في خطتي". وبعد ذلك، انطلق بحصانه في طريقه.

11-Later that day, Sapt could see that I was deep in thought, but I did not tell him what I was thinking. There was a knock at the door and a boy brought me a message. It read:

***Johann will take this letter for me. I warned you before. The Duke discovered that I helped you that night in the summer house. He is now keeping me a prisoner in his mansion because he cannot trust me. Please, if you can, rescue me from this house of murderers.***

Antoinette de Mauban

في وقت لاحق من ذلك اليوم، لاحظت ثابت أنني كنت مستغرقاً في الفكر، ولكنني لم أخبره فيما كنت أفكر. كان هناك طرقة على الباب، إنه صبي يحمل رسالة لي. كانت الرسالة تقول: يوهان سوف يأخذ هذه الرسالة من اجلي. لقد حذرتك من قبل. اكتشف الدوق أنني قد ساعدتك في تلك الليلة في المنزل الصيفي. وهو الآن يتحفظ علي كسجين في قصره نظراً لأنه لا يمكنه الوثوق بي. من فضلك، إذا كنت تستطيع، انقذني من بيت القتل هذا. أنطوانيت دو موبان

12-What could I do? Time went on and I knew that, for now, I could do nothing to help either Madame de Mauban or the King. I soon heard that the people in Strelsau did not like the fact that I had been away from them for so long. To keep them happy, my messengers told them that Flavia and I had arranged a date for our wedding, news which was greeted with great joy.

ماذا يمكن أن أفعل؟ مضى الوقت وكنت أعلم أنه، الآن، لا يمكنني أن أفعل شيئاً لمساعدة مدام دي موبان أو الملك. وسرعان ما سمعت أن الناس في ستريلسو لم يقبلوا حقيقة بعدى عنهم لفترة طويلة. وللحفاظ على سعادتهم، أخبرهم رُسلي أنني و فلافيا قد رتبنا موعد زفافنا، وهو الخبر الذي قوبل بفرح عظيم.

13-Not everyone wanted to know this news, however. Johann told me that the Duke was furious to hear about the wedding. At the same time, the King had become so ill that the Duke had asked for a doctor to examine him. The doctor advised him to set the King free at once, but the Duke refused, adding that the doctor would have to stay with him until he was better or died, whichever came first. Johann also told us that Antoinette de Mauban was helping to look after the King, who was guarded by two of the remaining Six Men at all times

ومع ذلك ليس الجميع كان يريد أن يعرف هذه الأخبار، أخبرني جوهان أن الدوق كان غاضباً عندما سمع عن حفل الزفاف. وفي الوقت نفسه، أصبح الملك مريضاً جداً حتى أن الدوق طلب طبيباً لفحصه. نصحه الطبيب بأن يحرر الملك في الحال، ولكن الدوق رفض، مضيفاً أن الطبيب سيضطر أن يبقى معه حتى يتحسن أو يموت، أيهما يأتي أولاً. أخبرني جوهان أيضاً أن أنطوانيت دو موبان تساعد في العناية بالملك، الذي كان يحرسه اثنان ممن تبقى من "الرجال الستة" في جميع الأوقات.

14-Although Johann did not want to return to the castle, we paid him well to go back and act as our spy. I found out from Johann where all the people stayed at night in the castle and the mansion, and who had the keys to the doors.

***"I'll give you fifty thousand pieces of gold if you do what I ask you tomorrow night,"*** I told Johann.

***"I hear there are new servants at the castle. Do these servants know the King's a prisoner there?"***

***"No, they don't know who the prisoner is,"*** he answered.

***"So if they saw me, they'd think that I was the King?"*** I asked.

***"Yes, they would, sir."***

***"Good. Tomorrow night, give this letter to Antoinette de Mauban. Then, at two o'clock in the morning, open the front door to the mansion. Ask no more questions. Now go."***

على الرغم من أن جوهان لا يريد العودة إلى القلعة، دفعنا له جيداً لكي يعود ويتصرف كجاسوس لنا. اكتشفت من جوهان أماكن إقامة جميع الناس أثناء الليل في القلعة والقصر، ومن لديه مفاتيح الأبواب. قلت لجوهان: "سأعطيك خمسين ألف قطعة من الذهب إذا فعلت ما أطلب منك ليلة الغد،



سمعت أن هناك خدم جدد في القلعة. هل يعرف هؤلاء الخدم أن الملك سجين هناك؟ "فأجاب: "لا، لا يعرفون من هو السجين". سألته: "إذاً لو رأوني، لظنوا أنني الملك؟". "نعم، سوف يظنون ذلك يا سيدي." "جيد، ليلة الغد أعطي هذه الرسالة إلى أنطوانيت دو موبان، ثم، في الثانية صباحاً، أفتح الباب الأمامي للقصر، ولا تطرح مزيد من الأسئلة، اذهب الآن

15-When he was gone, I told Sapt and Fritz about my plan. It was our only chance to save the King. Sapt would take some men to the front door of the mansion. When Johann opened the door, they would quickly enter and tie up the servants if they did not want to help the King. At the same time Madame de Mauban would cry out for help from her room. The Duke would surely come to see what was happening, and we could take him. Then there would only be two men left guarding the King, so we would need to move quickly before they hurt him.

عندما سمحت له بالانصراف، أخبرته ثابت وفريتز عن خطتي. أنها فرصتنا الوحيدة لإنقاذ الملك. سيأخذ ثابت بعض الرجال إلى الباب الأمامي للقصر. عندما يفتح جوهان الباب، سيدخلون بسرعة ويربطون الخدم إذا لم يريدوا مساعدة الملك. وفي الوقت نفسه سوف تصرخ مدام دي موبان من غرفتها للحصول على مساعدة. سيأتي الدوق بالتأكيد لمعرفة ما يحدث، وعندها يمكننا أن نأخذه. ومن ثم لن يبقى هناك سوى رجلان في حراسة الملك، وعندها علينا أن نتحرك بسرعة قبل أن يؤذوه

16-Meanwhile, the house at Tarlenheim was to be filled with lights and music so that people believed we were having a ball. Marshal Strakencz would guard the house and the Princess and if, the next day, we had not returned, he would then march to the castle and ask to see the King at once. If the King was not there, he would quickly take Princess Flavia back to the capital where she would become Queen.

وفي الوقت نفسه، يجب أن يُملأ المنزل في تارلنهييم بالأضواء والموسيقى لكي يعتقد الناس أن هناك حفلة. سيقوم المارشال ستراكينكز بحراسة المنزل والأميرة وإذا لم نعود، في اليوم التالي، سوف يسير بالجيش إلى القلعة ويطلب أن يرى الملك في الحال. وإذا لم يكن الملك هناك، فعليه أن يعود سريعاً بالأميرة فلافيا إلى العاصمة حيث ستصبح ملكة

17-So that night, at midnight, Sapt took his men to the mansion. I rode alone a different way to the castle, with clothes to keep me warm, weapons and a rope. Half an hour later, I was back by the moat. I left my horse and gun in some trees, tied some rope to another tree and climbed down into the water once more. I swam back to the pipe below the window, but now the pipe was fastened to the wall and no light showed. I looked up at the mansion and saw that the lights were on in the windows to the Duke's and Madame de Mauban's rooms.

لذا، تلك الليلة، في منتصف الليل، أخذ ثابت رجاله إلى القصر. انطلقت وحدي في طريق مختلف للقلعة، مرتدياً ملابس تبقيني دافئاً، ومعى أسلحة وحبل. وبعد نصف ساعة عدت إلى جوار الخندق. تركت حصاني وبنديتي بين بعض الأشجار، وربط بعض الحبل في شجرة أخرى، وقفرت في الماء مرة أخرى. سبحت مرة أخرى إلى الماسورة أسفل النافذة، ولكن الآن تم تثبيت الماسورة على الجدار ولم يظهر أي ضوء. نظرت إلى القصر ورأيت أن الأضواء كانت مضاءة في نوافذ غرفتي الدوق ومام دي موبان.

18-Then I heard voices and I saw Rupert walk towards the castle onto the drawbridge with De Gautet. **"Let's go across before they lift the drawbridge for the night,"** Rupert said. They walked across and shortly after, the bridge went up. A few minutes later, Rupert returned alone. He looked around him and then quietly climbed down some hidden steps to the moat and swam across. Then he climbed some steps opposite and disappeared back into the mansion. What was he doing? It seemed that I was not the only one who had a plan for that dark, warm night.

ثم، سمعت أصواتاً ورأيت روبرت يسير نحو القلعة على الجسر المتحرك مع دي جوتيت. وقال روبرت: "دعنا نعبّر قبل أن ترفعوا الجسر المتحرك لهذه الليلة". عبروا الجسر، وبعد فترة وجيزة، رُفِعَ الجسر. وبعد بضع دقائق عاد روبرت وحده. نظر حوله ثم بهدوء نزل على بعض السلالم الخفية إلى الخندق وسبح عبره. ثم تسلق بعض السلالم المقابلة واختفى مرة أخرى داخل القصر. ماذا كان يفعل؟ يبدو أنني لم أكن الوحيد الذي لديه خطة لتلك الليلة المظلمة الدافئة

# Questions & Answers

## 1- What three pieces of news arrived at Tarlenheim the next day?

- The people of Strelsau heard that the King was badly injured مصاب while hunting.
- The Duke thought he was badly injured.
- The Princess ordered Marshall Strakencz to take her to Tarlenheim to see the King (Rassendyll) as she heard that he had been injured.

## 2- Why was Princess Flavia relieved شعرت بارتياح when she arrived at Tarlenheim?

- She was relieved to see that the king's (Rassendyll's) injury was not serious.

## 3- Why did Rassendyll and the others have to do something quickly?

- Because Johann told them that the King (Rudolf Elphberg) was looking weak and ill. They could not wait any longer or he would surely بالتأكد die.

## 4- Who went with Rassendyll to the Castle of Zenda? Why? What did they take with them?

- Sapt and Fritz with seven men went with Rassendyll to the Castle of Zenda. They wanted to see it so that they could make plans to rescue ينقذ the King. They all had weapons أسلحة and horses.

## 5- Where did Rassendyll ask the seven men to wait?

- He asked them to wait with the horses at about a few hundred metres from the castle.

## 6- How did Max Holf, the brother of Johann, meet his end? لقي حتفه

- He fell asleep while he was guarding the King's prison. So Rassendyll stabbed him to death.

## 7- Why did Rassendyll kill Max Holf?

- He was guarding the King's prison. Rassendyll killed him because that was a war for the King's life and Max was working for the enemy عدو.

## 8- What did Rassendyll realise when he looked at the pipe?

- He realised that the bottom of the pipe was not fastened مثبت to the wall and he could see light coming from its far end.

## 9- Why would no one hear the boat when Rassendyll rowed back to the rope?

- Because the wind was blowing hard.

**10- How did Rassendyll get rid of يتخلص من Max's body?**

- He tied the rope round Max's body and asked Sapt to pull it up.

**11- Why did the seven gentlemen go with Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz to the castle? What did they do?**

- They went to protect the horses and the others in case ربما the Duke's men attacked. They fought with the Duke's men and three of them were killed.

**12- Why did Rassendyll and the men return home with heavy hearts?**

- Because three of Sapt's men were killed. They were worried about the health of the King, and angry that Rupert had escaped.

**13- Why was the Chief of Police looking for Mr Rassendyll?**

- Because he disappeared. His family did not hear from him. The British ambassador reported Rassendyll missing.

**14- What did Rassendyll tell the Chief of Police to do so that the game of replacing the king wouldn't be discovered?**

- He told him to go back to Strelsau and tell the Ambassador what he knew. He asked him to return in two weeks to tell him what he had found.

**15- What did Rassendyll ask Rupert to do when they met near the castle of Zenda?**

- He asked him to let the king go free and stop working for Michael.

**16- Rassendyll met Rupert the next day while they are were riding. What plan did Rupert offer to Rassendyll?**

- He offered to help him attack the castle. But Sapt, Fritz, Michael and the King had to die. Then Rassendyll could stay as King and Rupert would be given a reward.

**17- What did Rupert Hentzau think of Michael?**

- He thought that Michael was not a good man. Michael made him angry and Rupert nearly killed him.

**18- Why was Antoinette de Mauban being kept as a prisoner of the Duke?**

- Because he discovered that she helped Rassendyll in the summer house. He also could not trust her.

**19- Why did Antoinette de Mauban send a message to Rassendyll with a boy?**

- Because the Duke was keeping her a prisoner in his mansion because he couldn't trust her. She asked Rassendyll to rescue her from that house of murderers.

**20- How did the people in Strelsau react when Rassendyll and Flavia arranged a date for their wedding?**

- They were very happy.

**21- What was Michael's reaction رد فعل when he heard that Rassendyll and Flavia arranged a date for their wedding?**

- He was very furious.

**22- Why did the Duke ask for a doctor to see the real king? What was the doctor's advice?**

- Because the King had become so ill. The doctor advised him to set the King free at once, but the Duke refused.

**23- A doctor had been brought to see the real King in his prison. Why didn't Duke Michael let the doctor leave?**

- Because the doctor would tell people that the King was a prisoner.

**24- Who was helping the doctor to look after the king at the castle?**

- Antoinette de Mauban was helping the doctor to look after the king at the castle.

**25- Who was guarding the king at the castle?**

- Two of Michael's six men were guarding him.

**26- Why did Rassendyll and his men pay Johann well?**

- He paid him well to go back to the castle and act as their spy.

**27- What secrets did Johann tell Rassendyll?**

- He told him where all the people stayed at night in the castle and the mansion القصر, and who had the keys to the doors.

**28- What did Rassendyll offer Johann? Why?**

- He offered Johann fifty thousand pieces of gold to open the front door to the mansion at 2 o'clock in the morning and to give a letter to Antoinette de Mauban.

**29- What was Rassendyll's plan to break into the castle and rescue the king?**

- At midnight, Sapt would take some men to the front door of the mansion. When Johann opened the door, they would quickly enter and tie up

the servants if they did not want to help the King. At the same time Madame de Mauban would cry out for help from her room. The Duke would come to see what was happening. They would kill him. Then they would go to the king's room and rescue him.

**30- Why did Rassendyll ask Antoinette de Mauban to cry out for help at two o'clock in the morning?**

- So the Duke would go to help her. At the same time Johann would open the front door to let in Sapt and Fritz with their men.

**31- Why was the house at Tarlenheim to be filled with lights and music?**

- So that people would believe Rassendyll and his men were having a ball.

**32- What was Marshal Strakencz's role in Rassendyll's plan to save the king?**

- He would guard the house and the Princess and if, the next day, they had not returned, he would march to the castle and ask to see the King at once. If the King was not there, he would quickly take Princess Flavia back to the capital where she would become Queen.

**33- How did Rassendyll go to the castle? What did he take with him?**

- He rode alone a different way to the castle, with clothes to keep him warm, weapons and a rope.

**34- Why did Rupert Hentzau swim across the moat to go back to the mansion? Why didn't he use the drawbridge?**

- The drawbridge had been pulled up for the night. He was doing something secret, so he did not use the bridge.

## **Quotations**

**1- *"We couldn't wait any longer or he would surely die."***

**1- Who said these words?**

- Rassendyll said these words.

**2- Where were these words said?**

- These words were said at the country house "Tarlenheim".

**3- Who 'would surely die' and why?**

- King Rudolf Elphberg, who was held prisoner in the castle, would surely die because he was looking very weak and ill and he needed to be set free at once.

**2- *"Why doesn't my brother kill me now?"***

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- The king said this to Detchard.

**2- Why did the speaker's brother want to kill him?**

- Michael wanted to kill his brother to take the crown.

**3- Who want to rescue the king?**

- Rassendyll, Sapt, Fritz and other men want to rescue the king.

**3- "The Duke doesn't want you to die, not yet anyway. Sleep well!"**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Detchard said this to the king.

**2- Where was this said?**

- At the castle of Zenda.

**3- What was the addressed person doing there?**

- He was held prisoner at the castle of Zenda by Duke Michael.

**4- "Go back to Strelsau and tell the Ambassador what you know. I'll look into this for you."**

**1- Who does Rassendyll say this to?**

- Rassendyll says this to the Chief of Police of Strelsau.

**2- What is it that Rassendyll will look into?**

- Rassendyll will look into the case of the missing Englishman Mr Rassendyll.

**3- Why doesn't he want the Chief of Police to investigate about the missing man?**

- Because he might find out that Rassendyll is pretending to be the King.

**5- "Would you really work against Michael?"**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rassendyll said this to Rupert Hentzau.

**2- Would that person really work against Michael? Why? Why not?**

- Yes, he would. He didn't like Michael and said that he was not a good man. He said Michael made him angry and that he had nearly killed him the night before.

**3- What did the speaker ask that person to do before that?**

- Rassendyll asked Rupert to let the imprisoned King go free.

**6- "He makes me angry. I nearly killed him myself last night. Think carefully about my plan."**

**1- Who says this to Rassendyll?**

- Rupert Hentzau says this.

**2- Who is the person talking about?**

- He is talking about Duke Michael.

**3- What is the person's plan?**

- He will help Rassendyll attack the castle. Hentzau will decide the time. But Sapt, Fritz, Michael and the real King must all die. Then Rassendyll will remain King and Hentzau will have a reward (and escape).

**7- "The Duke discovered that I helped you that night in the summer house."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Antoinette said this in her letter to Rassendyll.

**2- How did the speaker help the addressed person before?**

- She warned him against Michael's plan to kill him.

**3- How did Michael punish that person?**

- He kept her a prisoner in his mansion.

**8- "He is now keeping me a prisoner in his mansion because he cannot trust me."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Antoinette de Mauban said this in her letter to Rassendyll.

**2- Who was keeping that person a prisoner?**

- Duke Michael was keeping that person a prisoner.

**3- Why was that person kept a prisoner?**

- Because Duke Michael discovered that she had helped Rassendyll in the summer house, so he couldn't trust her.

9- **"Please, if you can, rescue me from this house of murderers."**

1- **Who said this to whom?**

- Antoinette de Mauban said this in her letter to Rassendyll.

2- **Which house did the speaker refer to?**

- Michael's mansion.

3- **Why was that house called 'house of murderers'?**

- Because Duke Michael and his men were planning to kill the king. Michael also kept Antoinette de Mauban a prisoner because she helped Rassendyll at the summer house.

10- **"I hear there are new servants at the castle. Do these servants know the King's a prisoner there?"**

1- **Who says this to Johann?**

- Rassendyll says it.

2- **What does Johann answer?**

- He answers that the servants do not know that the prisoner is the King.

3- **Why is that important?**

- Rassendyll wants to know if the servants will think he is the King (and obey him or surrender يستسلم to him when he attacks the castle).

11- **"Tomorrow night, give this letter to Antoinette de Mauban."**

1- **Who said this to whom and where?**

- Rassendyll said this to Johann at the country house 'Tarlenheim'.

2- **Where was Antoinette at that time?**

- She was kept a prisoner at Michael's mansion.

3- **What did the speaker ask Antoinette to do?**

- He wanted her to cry out for help from her room at 2 o'clock in the morning and Johann would open the front door to the mansion at the same time. Sapt and his men would go into the mansion and save the King.

**Find the mistake in each sentence and correct it**

1- The Duke knew that **Max Rolf** injured Rassendyll.

( **Rupert Hentzau**)

2- The **false** King' was weak and ill.

(**true**)

3- **Rupert Hentzau** was asleep in the boat and didn't see Rassendyll.

(**Max Rolf**)

4- One of **Rassendyll's** men called out, "They've got me, Rupert!"

(**the Duke's**)

5- **Two** of Rassendyll's men were killed.

(**Three**)

6- The British **king** reported that an Englishman had disappeared near Zenda. (**Ambassador**)

7- Rassendyll does not want the Chief of Police to ask about him because he might discover the truth about **the duke**.

(**the King**)

8- Rupert offers to help attack the castle, but the King, **Rassendyll**, Sapt and Fritz must all die. (**Michael**)

9- Antoinette de Mauban asked **Rupert Hentzau** to rescue her from the Duke. (**Rassendyll**)

10- Rassendyll told Johann to open the front door of the mansion **at midnight**. (**at two in the morning**)

11- The Princess went to Tarlenheim to see **the King**.

(**the King**)

12- **Duke Michael** offered to help Rassendyll remain King.

(**Rupert Hentzau**)

13- Rassendyll killed Max Holf in the ship.

(**boat**)

14- Rassendyll and his men went to the castle to **kill** the King. (**rescue**)

15- The house at **the stone lodge** was filled with lights and music. (**Tarlenheim**)

16- **Rupert Hentzau** believed Rassendyll travelled with Madame de Mauban. (**George Featherly**)

17- Chief of Police was looking for a missing Frenchman. (**Englishman**)

18- Rupert Hentzau was seen by **Sapt** crossing the drawbridge then swimming back. (**Rassendyll**)

19- De Gautet was seen by Rassendyll only crossing the **borders**. (**drawbridge**)

20- Lauengram was killed by **Michael's** men. (**Rassendyll's**)



## **Homework ((A))**

### **A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1-What were the three pieces of news which arrived at the Tarlenheim country house?
- 2- Why was the Princess relieved when she saw the king's injury?
- 3- What was the bad news about the real king ?
- 4- Rassendyll ,Sapt and Fritz were loyal to the king. Discuss
- 5- What did Rassendyll consider the strangest thing in the history of any country?
- 6- The water was not cold so it helped Rassendyll. Illustrate.
- 7- Why couldn't anyone see Rassendyll although he heard their voices?
- 8-What did Rassendyll see from the window?
- 9- How did Rassendyll justify his killing Max Holf ( Johann's brother )?
- 10- What did Rassendyll find the pipe like?
- 11- Show that the king was in despair in his imprisonment.
- 12- What was Detchard's answer to the king's question?
- 13-How did Rassendyll go back to the place where Sapt was waiting ?
- 14- Why was it difficult for anyone to hear the boat?
- 15- What did Rassendyll do to Max's body?
- 16- What happened when Sapt whistled to the seven men to come and get them?
- 17- Why couldn't Rupert see Rassendyll or Sapt ?
- 18- Why did Rupert manage to escape from them?
- 19-The seven men were loyal and brave. Illustrate.
- 20-The murder of the three men wasn't the only sorrow for Rassendyll.Explain.
- 21-Why did the Chief of the Police in Strelsau visit Rassendyll (the pretend king)?
- 22- What did Mr Featherly tell the police about Rassendyll?
- 23 – What did Rassendyll tell the Chief of the Police about Antoinette de Mauban?
- 24-What did Rassendyll ( the pretend king ) order the Chief of the Police to do?
- 25- How did Rassendyll feel after the visit of the Chief of the Police?
- 26- What did Rassendyll try to persuade Rupert to do ?

### **B) Read the following quotation and answer the questions:**

**1- " Why doesn't my brother kill me now?"**

- a)Who said these words to whom?
- b)Why did the speaker's brother want to kill him?
- c)Who wants to rescue the king ?

**2- "I believe she and her guests were guests of Duke Michael. "**

- a)Who said these words to whom?
- b)Who were they talking about?
- c)What happened to the woman after that?

**3- "Return in two weeks and I'll tell you what I have found"**

- a)Who said these words to whom?
- b)What did the addressed person want the speaker to find?
- c)Why did the speaker want two weeks ?

**4-"He's well. He hopes he'll soon be in Strelsau "**

- a)Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b)Who was the speaker talking about?
- c)What did the sentence"**he hopes he'll soon be in Strelsau**" mean?

**5-"They've got me , Rupert! There are seven of them. Save yourself"**

- a)Who said these words ?

b) Who caught the speakers?

c) How did the listener save himself?

**C) Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:**

1- Four pieces of news arrived at the Tarlenheim country house.

2- People of Strelsau heard that the king was badly injured and they were pleased

3- Sapt told me that Princess Flavia had ordered him to take her to see me

4- The Princess was worried to see that my injury wasn't serious .

5- I joined Sapt and Fritz with eight men.

6- Rassendyll used the robe to climb down into the castle.

7- I saw the giant tree that led from his window to the moat

8- The guard in the boat was Detchard

9- I stabbed him to life

10- The top of the pipe wasn't fastened to the wall

11- "Why doesn't my brother save me now?" said the king in a weak voice

12- Rassendyll ran towards the horses head with a large sword.

13- Rupert cut Rassendyll's stick with his knife.

14- Lauengram and Krafstein were killed by Sapt

15- We went home with lucky hearts for our friends.

16- Two of Rassendyll's men died in the fight

17- The British ambassador had reported that a German man called Rassendyll disappeared .

**Homework ((B))**

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1- Rupert had no principles مبادئ and a bloody man . Discuss.

2- Why was the relation between Michael and Rupert not a good one ?

3- Do you think Rassendyll would agree to Rupert's wicked plan to be king?

4- What could Sapt see when he met Rassendyll on that day?

5- Why did Antoinette send Rassendyll that 2nd message?

6- Duke Michael couldn't trust Antoinette de Mauban any more. Illustrate

7- What did Rassendyll feel after reading Antoinette 2nd message ?

8- Why were the people in Strelsau angry with the king ( Rassendyll )?

9- What did Rassendyll do to keep the people in Strelsau happy ?

10- How did the people in Strelsau receive the news of the wedding ( marriage ) الزواج?

11- According to Johann , How did Michael receive the wedding news?

12- Why did Michael ask for a doctor to examine the real king?

13- What did the doctor advise the Duke after examining the real king?

14- How did the Duke punish the doctor for his honesty ?

15- How far was Antoinette de Mauban kind?

16- Why did Rassendyll and Sapt pay Johann well?

17- How far was Johann's information important to them?

18- Why did Rassendyll offer 50 thousand pieces of gold?

19- How was Rassendyll cunning and wise when he planned to save the king?

20- Why was Johann asked to open the front door at two o'clock in the morning?

21- What role could Antoinette de Mauban play in Rassendyll's plan?

22- What was the Marshall role in that plan ?

23- When did Rassendyll begin his plan? How?

24- What did Rassendyll see when he was in the moat?

25- What was the strange thing Rassendyll noticed about Rupert?

**B) Read the following quotation and answer the questions:**

**1- "You'll stay as the king and I'll get a reward. "**

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) What was the speaker's plan?
- c) Did the addressed person agree with that plan?

**2- "How 's my brother today? "**

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) Where were they ?
- c) About whom was the speaker asking?

**3- "Let's go across before they lift the drawbridge for tonight. "**

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) What did the speaker do, which was surprising?
- c) What did Rassendyll understand from the speaker's strange behaviour?

**4- "So if they saw me, they'd think that I was the king. "**

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) What does " **they** ' refer to?
- c) What was the occasion?

**5- "Tomorrow night, give this letter to Antoinette de Mauban. "**

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) Where was Antoinette at that time?
- c) What did the speaker ask Antoinette to do?

**C) Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:**

- 1- "If you let your prisoner go free , I will kill you." Said Rassendyll
- 2- Antoinette asked Rassendyll to rescue her from the hotel
- 3- The Duke set a date for the wedding ceremony .
- 4- Johann took a present to Antoinette de Mauban
- 5- The Duke became so ill that a doctor was fetched
- 6- Rupert made an evil plan to be king
- 7- Rupert wanted Sapt and Fritz to be dismissed
- 8- Antoinette de Mauban was rewarded by Michael
- 9- The Duke was delighted to hear about the wedding
- 10- Antoinette de Mauban was helping to kill the king
- 11- They paid Johann to return to the castle and work as their doctor.
- 12- Rassendyll would give 100 pieces of gold to Johann.
- 13- Johann was asked to close the front door
- 14- Antoinette would cry for pain from her room.
- 15- The Marshall would take Flavia to Strelsau to be a servant
- 16- Four of the remaining famous six were guarding the king.
- 17- If the tree was lifted , no one could enter the castle

## Chapter 8

moat	خندق مائي	chained	مُقيّد
drawbridge	جسر متحرك	break free	يتحرر
mansion	قصر	reach forward	يمد يديه للأمام
punish	يعاقب	push hard	يضغط بشدة
treat	يعامل	lay on the floor	يرقد علي الأرض
a sword fight	قتال بالسيف	moan	يتأوه
strike his sword	يضرب بسيفه	frightened-looking	يبدو عليهم الخوف
spy	جاسوس	unhurt	غير مصاب
search	يفتش	point a gun at	يصبو مسدسا الي
unlock	يفتح	ignore	يتجاهل
position	وضع/مكانة	lean heavily on	يستند بشدة الي
approach	يقترّب من	coach	عربة تجرها الخيل
nonsense	كلام فارغ	bow	ينحني
beat	يهزم/يدق	excuse	عذر
judgment	حكم	party	مجموعة
the appointed time	الوقت المحدد	for the good of	لصالح / لمصلحة
run off	يجري بعيدا/يهرب	get off his horse	ينزل من علي الحصان

1-It was cold waiting in the water of the moat, so when Rupert disappeared into the mansion, I slowly climbed out and waited by the drawbridge gate next to the castle. Now only Detchard, Bersonin and De Gautet were left to protect the King in his prison. If only I had the keys to the King's room, but I knew I had to be patient.

كان الجو بارداً أثناء انتظارنا في مياه الخندق، ولذلك عندما اختفى روبرت داخل القصر، قفزت للخارج ببطء وانتظرت بجوار بوابة الجسر المتحرك بجوار القلعة، الآن فقط بقي ديتشارد وبيرسونين و دي جوتيت لحماية الملك في سجنه، تمنيت لو كان معي مفاتيح غرفة الملك، ولكني كنت أعلم أنه يجب علي التحلي بالصبر.

2-It was a quiet night and it was about one o'clock in the morning when there was a loud noise from the mansion. I looked up at one of the windows and saw a shadow walk across the light. A woman's voice cried, "**Help! Michael, help me!**" It was Antoinette de Mauban. This was exactly what I had asked her to say in my message to her, but it was around an hour too early, before my friends had reached the front door to the mansion, and before Johann had time to open it.

I pulled out my sword and stood ready for what might happen. Then I heard her calling again.

"**Help, Michael! It's Rupert Hentzau!**" called Antoinette.

لقد كانت ليلة هادئة، وكانت الساعة حوالي الواحدة في الصباح عندما كان هناك ضجيج مرتفع من القصر، نظرت إلى أعلى في أحد النوافذ، ورأيت ظل إنسان يسير على الأقدام عبر الضوء، وصاحت امرأة: "النجدة! ساعدني يا مايكل!" لقد كانت أنطوانيت دو موبان. وكان هذا بالضبط ما قد طلبت منها أن تقوله في رسالتي لها، ولكنه كان مبكراً جداً لنحو ساعة، وكان قبل أن يصل أصدقائي إلى الباب الأمامي للقصر، وقبل أن يحين الوقت لجوهان لفتحه. سحبت سيفي، ووقفت على أهبة الاستعداد لما يمكن أن يحدث. ثم سمعتها تنادي مرة أخرى قائلة: "ساعدني يا مايكل! إنه روبرت هينتزوا!"

3-Michael must have heard Antoinette de Mauban call out, because I then heard him running to help her with his servants. There was now a loud argument.

**"This woman's been writing secret letters to Rassendyll!"** I heard

Rupert call out. **"She needs to be punished!"**

**"She's my guest,"** I heard Michael say. **"It's you who needs to be punished!"**

There was a shout and a noisy sword fight began in the room. It was hard to see what was happening, but briefly I saw Rupert and Johann through the window. **"That's for you, Johann!"** Rupert called, striking his sword at him. **"I know you're Rassendyll's spy!"**

What had happened to Johann? What if he had been hurt? How could he open the door for our men? From the noises in the room, it seemed that Rupert was now fighting many men. Surely he would be caught. However, at the next moment, there was a loud cry and Rupert jumped out of the window and down into the moat below, where he swam away. Somehow, he had escaped.

لا بد أن مايكل سمع أنطوانيت دو موبان تستغيث، لأنني سمعته بعد ذلك يجري لمساعدتها هو و خدامه، والآن كان هناك جدال بصوت عالٍ، سمعت روبرت يقول: "هذه المرأة كتبت رسائل سرية إلى راسينديل! يجب معاقبتها!" وسمعت مايكل يقول: "إنها ضيقتي، وأنت هو من يحتاج إلى معاقبة!" وكان هناك صراخ وبدأ قتال صاحب بالسيف في الغرفة. كان من الصعب أن أرى ما يحدث، ولكن فقط رأيت روبرت وجوهان من خلال النافذة. وصاح روبرت قائلاً: "هذا لك، يا جوهان!" ، وكان يلوح بسيفه في وجهه. "فأنا أعلم أنك كنت جاسوس لراسينديل!" ماذا حدث لجوهان؟ ماذا لو أنه أصيب بأذى؟ كيف سيتمكن من فتح الباب لرجالنا؟ من الضجيج داخل الغرفة يبدو أن روبرت كان يقاتل الآن كثير من الرجال. ومن المؤكد أنه سوف يتم القبض عليه. ومع ذلك، في اللحظة التالية، كان هناك صرخة مدوية وقفز روبرت من النافذة ثم إلى أسفل إلى الخندق أدناه، حيث أنه سبح بعيداً. وبطريقة ما، هرب.

4-A minute later, De Gautet appeared in front of me, so I struck him with my sword and he fell to the ground. Quickly I looked through his clothes for the keys: there were three.

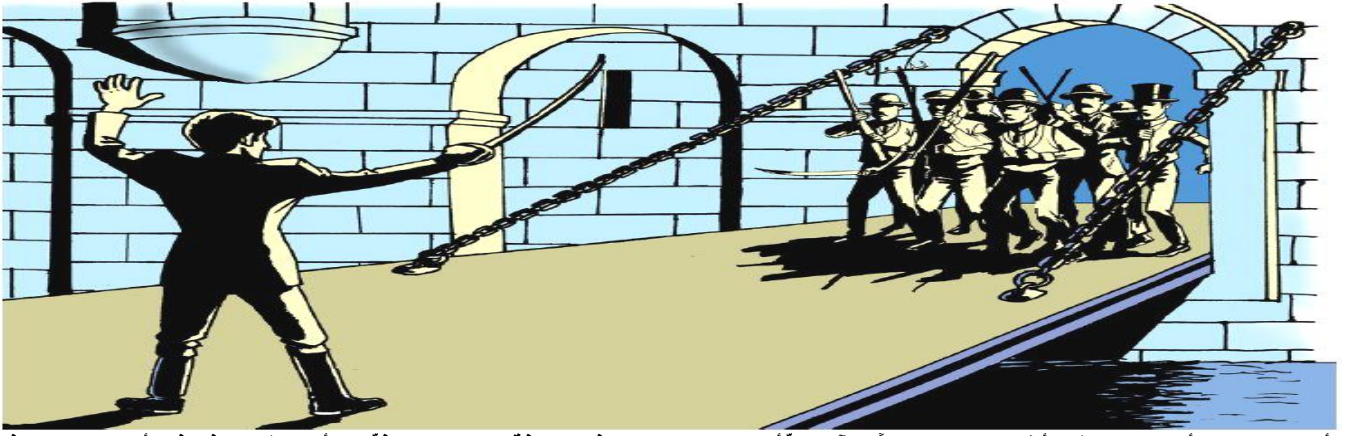
At last I could enter the room where the King was being kept prisoner. Opening the first door, I found myself at the top of some steps which led into a cold, dark room. The only light came from a small candle in one corner. As I walked down the steps, I could just hear voices coming from the room where the King was kept, behind a second door.

Carefully walking towards the door, I stepped back quickly when it was suddenly opened. Now I could hear Detchard speaking: **"We mustn't kill him yet or there'll be trouble."** When a person appeared, I struck him with my sword. It was Bersonin, who fell heavily to the ground.

وبعد دقيقة واحدة ظهر دي جوتيت أمامي، لذلك ضربته بسيفي، فسقط على الأرض ميتاً، وبسرعة بحثت في ملابسه لأجد المفاتيح: كان هناك ثلاثة مفاتيح. أخيراً يمكنني أن أدخل الغرفة حيث كان يجري الاحتفاظ بالملك السجين. عندما فتحت الباب الأول، وجدت نفسي في الجزء العلوي من بعض السلالم التي كانت تؤدي إلى غرفة مظلمة وباردة. الضوء الوحيد كان قادماً من شمعة صغيرة في أحد الزوايا. وبينما كنت أنزل على السلالم، كنت فقط أسمع أصوات قادمة من الغرفة حيث يحتفظون بالملك، خلف باب ثاني. وبينما كنت أمشي بعناية نحو الباب، خطوت للخلف بسرعة عندما تم فتحه فجأة. والآن تمكنت من الاستماع إلى حديث ديتشارد: "لا يجب أن نقتله الآن وإلا سوف تكون هناك مشكلة". وعندها ظهر شخص آخر فضربته بسيفي. لقد كان بيرسونين، والذي سقط على الأرض فجأة.

5-Understanding there was danger, Detchard closed the door fast: now surely he was alone in the room with the King and, remembering their plan, I knew the King was in real danger.

Taking one of the keys, I quickly unlocked the door to the second room and opened it nervously. I think I expected to see the King had already been killed, but once inside the room I was relieved to see that Detchard was being held by the King's doctor. The King, weak from illness and chained in one corner, looked on in fear. The doctor was too weak to hold Detchard for long, and before I could help him, Detchard broke free and killed the poor doctor with his sword.



عندما أدرك ديتشارد أن هناك خطر، أغلق الباب سريعاً: الآن بالتأكيد كان هو وحده في الغرفة مع الملك وتذكرت أنا خطتهم، فعرفت أن الملك كان في خطر حقيقي. أخذت واحداً من المفاتيح وسريعاً فتحت باب الغرفة الثانية بعصية. أعتقد أنني توقعت أن أرى الملك كان قد قُتل بالفعل ولكن عندما دخلت الغرفة فقد انتابني شعور بالارتياح عندما وجدت طبيب الملك يمسك بديتشارد. كان الملك ضعيفاً من المرض وكان مقيداً بالسلاسل في أحد الزوايا، وكان ينظر في خوف. ولكن الطبيب كان أضعف من أن يمسك بديتشارد لفترة طويلة، وقبل أن استطاع مساعدته، فر ديتشارد وقتل الطبيب المسكين بسيفه.

6-Detchard turned to me and said, "**At last!**" I held up my sword and it was lucky that Detchard did not have a gun. We began to fight. He was a much better swordsman than me and knew all the tricks: he smiled when he cut me on the arm, and I would soon have died if the King had not helped me.

**"My cousin Rudolf!"** he cried, as if he only now realised who I was. He reached forward and pushed the legs of a chair into Detchard's body.

**"Push hard!"** I called **"Push against his legs!"**

With the legs of the chair against him, Detchard found it hard to stand up. This made him angry, and he struck the King hard with his sword, but as he did so, he fell over the doctor's body. It was easy for me to kill him as he lay on the floor.

استدار ديتشارد ناحيتي وقال: "أخيراً"، فرفعت سيفي وكان من حسن الحظ أن ديتشارد لم يكن معه بندقية. بدأنا نقاتل. كان مبارزاً أفضل مني بكثير فهو يعرف كل الحيل: ابتسم عندما أصابني في ذراعي، وكنت قريباً من الموت إذا لم يساعدني الملك الذي صاح قانلاً: "ابن عمي رودولف!"، كما لو أنه أدرك الآن فقط من أكون. أنتقل إلى الأمام، ودفع جسم ديتشارد برجلي كرسى. ناديت: "ادفع بقوة"، ادفع ضد ساقيه! وبوجود رجلي الكرسى ضده، وجد ديتشارد صعوبة في الوقوف. وجعله هذا غاضباً، فضرب الملك ضربة قوية بسيفه، ولكن عندما كان يفعل ذلك، سقط على جسم الطبيب فكان من السهل لي أن أقتله لأنه كان يرقد على الأرض.

7-Was the King dead too? I ran to where he lay. How happy I was when the King moaned, so I knew he was alive. but before I could help him I heard Rupert somewhere outside the King's prison calling out, **"Come on, Michael! Let's fight!"**

I tore a piece from my shirt to make a bandage for the cut on my arm, and quietly opening the prison door, I looked out. The drawbridge was now down once more. Rupert stood in the middle of the bridge with his sword, while the door to the mansion at the other end of the drawbridge was guarded by some very frightened-looking servants, as well as Johann, who I was pleased to see was unhurt. Then Antoinette de Mauban angrily called out from behind the servants, **"The Duke's dead, you've already killed him!"**

**"Dead!"** called Rupert. **"That's good. Then I'm your leader now. Put down your weapons and do as I say."**

هل مات الملك أيضاً؟ جريت إلى حيث كان يرقد. كم كان سعادتي عندما تأوه الملك، فعلمت أنه كان على قيد الحياة. ولكن قبل أن أتمكن من مساعدته سمعت روبرت في مكان ما خارج سجن الملك ينادي قانلاً: "هيا، يا مايكل! دعنا نقاتل!" فمت بتمزيق قطعة من قميصي لكي اعمل ضمادة للإصابة التي كانت في ذراعي، وفتحت باب السجن بهدوء، ونظرت للخارج. كان الجسر المتحرك الآن موضوعاً مرة أخرى. كان روبرت يقف في منتصف الجسر بسيفه، بينما كان الباب المؤدى إلى القصر في الجانب الآخر من الجسر المتحرك يحرسه بعض الخدم يبدو عليهم الرعب، وكذلك جوهان، الذي كان من دواعي سروري أن أراه ولم يصب بأذى. ثم صاحبت أنطوانيت دو موبان غاضبة من وراء الخدام: "لقد مات الدوق، لقد قتلته بالفعل!" فصاح روبرت: "تقولين مات!، هذا أمر جيد، إذاً أنا زعيمكم الآن، ضعوا أسلحتكم وافعلوا ما أقول."



8-Instead of putting down their weapons, however, the servants allowed Antoinette de Mauban to walk onto the bridge, and she was pointing a gun at Rupert. But before she had time to shoot – if, indeed, she planned to – Rupert once again jumped quickly into the water below the bridge.

More loud voices were heard and I realised that Sapt and his men must have finally arrived at the front door, on the other side of the mansion. Feeling confident that the King would be safe, I ran after Rupert and also jumped into the water. He swam faster than I could with my wounded arm, and he quickly swam to where the rope was tied to the tree above the moat. He looked surprised but pleased to see the rope and quickly climbed up. I was, perhaps, a minute behind him and once at the top of the rope, I could see him running off into the forest. At one stage I saw him look back at me. I thought I saw him waving, as if it were a game, as if he knew I would never catch him.

بدلاً من وضع أسلحتهم قام الخدم، بالرغم من ذلك، بالسماح لأنطوانيت دو موبان بالسير على الجسر، وكانت تصوب ببندقية تجاه روبرت. ولكن قبل أن يحين الوقت لتطلق النار – إذا كانت، في الواقع، تعتزم ذلك – قفز روبرت مرة أخرى بسرعة في الماء تحت الجسر. سمعت أصوات أكثر، وأدركت أن ثابت ورجاله قد وصلوا أخيراً إلى الباب الأمامي للجانب الآخر من القصر. شعرت بالثقة في أن الملك أصبح في مأمن، فركضت خلف روبرت وقفزت أيضاً في الماء. كان يسبح أسرع مما يمكنني مع ذراعي الجرحى، وبسرعة سبح إلى حيث كان الحبل مربوطاً إلى شجرة فوق الخندق. بدت عليه الدهشة ولكنه كان مسروراً لرؤية الحبل وصعد بسرعة لأعلى. وكنت، ربما، وراءه بدقيقة واحدة، وعندما وصلت إلى الجزء العلوي من الحبل، أستطعت أن أراه يلوذ بالفرار داخل الغابة. وفي مرحلة من المراحل، رأيته ينظر إلى الوراء ناحيتي. أظن أنني رأيته يلوح لي، كما لو كنا في لعبة، كما لو كان يعلم أنني لن أمسك به أبداً.

9-We both ran, further and further into the forest of Zenda, until I heard another cry. What had Rupert done now? Soon I discovered that he had found a boy riding to market, and had quickly pulled him from the horse and taken his place. Rupert was trying to get the boy to be quiet by giving him some money, and this gave me time to catch up with him.

**"Stop!"** I shouted.

He looked at me and smiled.

**"What did you do at the castle?"** he asked.

**"I made sure that you are the last of the Six Men,"** I told him.

**"Do you mean that you got inside the King's prison?"** he asked with surprise.

**"I did."**

**"And what's happened to the King?"**

**"He was hurt, but he's alive,"** I told him.

**"Why didn't you follow my plan?"** he said. **"We could have worked well together."**

**"Get off your horse and fight like a man,"** I said.

ركض كلانا أبعد وأبعد في غابة زيندا، حتى سمعت صرخة أخرى. ماذا فعل روبرت الآن؟ وسرعان ما اكتشفت أنه وجد صبي يركب حصان متجهاً إلى السوق، وقد جره من فوق الحصان بسرعة وأخذ مكانه. كان روبرت يحاول أن يهدأ الصبي بإعطائه بعض المال، وهذا أعطاني الوقت للحاق به. صرخت قائلاً: "قف مكانك!". نظر لي وابتسم. وتساءل: "ماذا كنت تفعل في القلعة؟". قلت له: "لقد تأكدت من أنك أنت آخر الرجال الستة"، فسأل باستغراب: "هل يعني ذلك أنك وصلت إلى داخل سجن الملك؟". "نعم فعلت". "وما الذي حدث للملك؟" قلت له: "لقد أصيب، ولكنه على قيد الحياة" فقال: "لماذا لم تتبع خطتي؟ نحن يمكن أن نعمل معاً بشكل جيد." فقلت: "أنزل من فوق حصانك وقاتلني كرجل."

10-I ran at Rupert with my sword, but still on his horse, he easily pushed me away with his own sword. I ran at him again and managed to cut his cheek, but now he rode at me with his sword held high. I would surely have been killed, but at that moment there was a shout as Fritz arrived on another horse carrying a gun. Rupert stopped and looked at us. He



understood that he could not fight us both, so he turned the horse and rode away as fast as he could.

**"Go after him!"** I said to Fritz.

But Fritz was looking at me, not at Rupert. **"Sir, you don't look well,"** he said, and I suddenly felt very weak. Fritz got off his horse and ran up to me as I fell to the ground.

**"Is the King safe?"** I asked him weakly.

**"Thanks to you, he is,"** said Fritz. **"But you're injured. Here, let me help you."**

Next to us, the young boy looked on with wide eyes. **"Isn't that the King?"** he said, pointing at me. Fritz ignored him.

جريت ناحية روبرت بسيفي، ولكنه كان لا يزال على جواده، فدفعني بسهولة بعيداً بسيفه. ركضت باتجاهه مرة أخرى، وتمكنت من قطع خده، لكنه الآن اتجه ناحيتي شاهراً سيفه. كان من المؤكد أنني سأقتل، ولكن في تلك اللحظة كان هناك صرخة فقد وصل على حصان آخر وكان يحمل مسدساً. توقف روبرت ونظر إلينا. وقد فهم أنه لا يمكنه محاربتنا معاً، ولذلك استدار بحصانه وهرب بأسرع ما يمكن. قلت لفريتز: "أذهب خلفه!". ولكن فريتز كان ينظر الي، وليس لروبرت. وقال: "سيدي، أنت لا تبدو بخير". ، وفجأة شعرت أنني ضعيف جداً. ترجل فريتز عن جواده وركض ناحيتي فقد كنت أسقط على الأرض. سألته بضعف: "هل نجى الملك؟". قال فريتز: "بفضلك، هو كذلك. ولكنك مصاب بجروح. هيا، اسمحلي أن أساعدك." وقريب منا، كان الصبي ينظر إلينا بعيون واسعة. وقال مشيراً إلي: "أليس ذلك هو الملك؟". ولكن فريتز تجاهله.

11-After a long rest, I felt strong enough to walk back, leaning heavily on Fritz's arm. I later learnt from Fritz and Antoinette de Mauban what happened that night at the castle and the events leading up to it. A few months earlier, the Duke had met Antoinette de Mauban in Paris and had asked her to Ruritania to see the coronation. She respected the Duke and was pleased to be his guest. However, some of the Duke's servants told her servants about the Duke's ambitions to be King. She did not like his evil plans and decided to warn me of everything he wanted to do.

When the Duke found out that she had warned me in Strelsau, he tricked Antoinette de Mauban by inviting her and her servants to his castle. Once she was there, he made sure they could not leave in order to stop her telling anyone about his plan.

وبعد استراحة طويلة، شعرت أنني أصبحت متماسكاً بما يكفي لأعود سيراً، أستندت بشدة على ذراع فريتز. علمت لاحقاً من فريتز وأنطوانيت دو موبان ما حدث تلك الليلة في القلعة والأحداث التي أدت إليها. منذ بضعة أشهر في وقت سابق، قابل الدوق أنطوانيت دو موبان في باريس وطلب منها أن تحضر إلى روريتانيا لرؤية التتويج. كانت تحترم الدوق، وكانت مسرورة أن تكون ضيفة عليه. ومع ذلك، قام بعض خدم الدوق بالتصريح لخدمها عن طموحات الدوق في أن يكون الملك. لم تقبل خطته الشريرة، وقررت أن تحذرنى من كل ما يريد أن يفعل. وعندما اكتشف الدوق أنها حذرتني ونحن في ستريلسو، خدع أنطوانيت دو موبان بدعوتها وخدمها إلى قصره. وعندما وصلت هناك، تأكد من أنها لا تستطيع المغادرة لكي يمنعها من أن تخبر أي شخص عن خطته.

12-Luckily, with Johann as our spy, Antoinette was still able to send us letters and we could use her position in the castle to help us. Somehow, however, Rupert discovered that she was helping us, so he wanted to punish her; by chance he chose the very night that we were attacking the castle.

When Michael came to see what was happening, Rupert killed him in the fight that followed. Rupert, it seemed, believed that without the Duke, I really would stay as the King and somehow reward him for his evil work. He did not understand that I was pretending to be the King for the good of Ruritania: he believed I wanted to be King forever.

لحسن الحظ، مع وجود جوهان كجاسوس لنا، كانت أنطوانيت لا تزال قادرة على إرسال رسائل لنا ويمكننا استخدام مكانها في القلعة لمساعدتنا. ومع ذلك، وبطريقة ما، اكتشف روبرت أنها كانت تساعدنا، ولذلك أراد أن يعاقبها؛ ومن قبيل الصدفة أنه اختار الليلة ذاتها التي قمنا نحن فيها بمهاجمة القلعة. وعندما جاء مايكل لمعرفة ما كان يحدث، قتله روبرت في المعركة التي تلت ذلك. يبدو أن روبرت اعتقد أنه بدون الدوق، سأظل أنا بالفعل كملك وعلى نحو ما سوف أكافاه على عمله الشر. أنه لم يفهم أنني كنت أظاهر بأنني الملك لخير روريتانيا: أنه كان يعتقد أنني أردت أن أكون ملكاً إلى الأبد.

13-Because Johann was helping the Duke, he could not open the front door for Sapt and his men at two o'clock, and it took a long time before they could finally enter the mansion. This they did just as Rupert was escaping from Antoinette de Mauban. Soon Sapt found the King lying in his prison, hurt but still alive. He was carried with his face covered to the mansion, where Antoinette helped to look after the poor King until another doctor could arrive. Meanwhile, Fritz came to look for me, knowing that I must have run off into the forest after Rupert.

ولأن جوهان كان يساعد الدوق، لم يستطع أن يفتح الباب الأمامي لثابت ورجاله في الثانية صباحاً، واستغرق ذلك وقتاً طويلاً قبل أن يتمكنوا أخيراً من دخول القصر. وهذا هو ما فعلوه أثناء هروب روبرت من أنطوانيت دو موبان. وسرعان ما وجد ثابت الملك ملقى على الأرض في سجنه، كان مصاباً ولكنه لا يزال على قيد الحياة. تم نقله، ووجهه مغطى، إلى القصر، حيث ساعدت أنطوانيت في الاعتناء بالملك المسكين حتى وصول طبيب آخر. ومن ناحية أخرى، جاء فريتز يبحث عني، عندما علم أنني أنطلقت إلى الغابة وراء روبرت.

14-Back at the castle, Colonel Sapt had to ask Johann and Antoinette de Mauban to guard the secret about the real King. His men and the servants thought that the King had been injured while rescuing the prisoner, who had gone after Rupert Hentzau. News was sent to Tarlenheim to tell the Princess that the King was hurt but alive, and that she should wait at Tarlenheim for him. The people of Strelsau also heard that the brave King had fought with his brother because he had kept a prisoner in Zenda who was a friend of the King. The Duke had tried to kill the King, who was injured, but the evil Duke had died.

وعندما كانوا في القلعة مرة أخرى، اضطر العقيد ثابت أن يطلب من جوهان وأنطوانيت دو موبان أن يحفظوا سر الملك الحقيقي. فرجاله وخدامه يعتقدون أن الملك قد أصيب أثناء إنقاذ السجين، والذي ذهب وراء روبرت هينتزau. تم إرسال الأخبار إلى تارلينهيم لإخبار الأميرة أن الملك أصيب ولكنه على قيد الحياة، وأنه ينبغي عليها أن تنتظره في تارلينهيم. كما سمع الناس في ستريلسو أن الملك الشجاع تقاتل مع أخوه لأنه قد أبقى سجيناً في زيندا والذي كان صديقاً للملك. حاول الدوق أن يقتل الملك، الذي أصيب بجروح، ولكن الدوق الشرير توفي.

15-However, Princess Flavia did not want to wait at Tarlenheim and asked Marshal Strakencz to take her to Zenda at once so she could see the King. Her coach was approaching the castle as Fritz led me back from the forest. When we saw the coach, I quickly hid behind a tree, but we did not realise that the boy whose horse Rupert had taken had followed us. He was very excited and called out, "Princess! The King's here, behind this tree!"

We tried to keep the boy quiet, but it was too late. The Princess's coach had stopped and I could see the Marshal leaning out of the coach window to talk to the boy.

**"What you say is nonsense," called Strakencz. "The King's injured in the castle."**

**"No, really, he's here. He fought a man who took my horse."**

ومع ذلك، لم تُرد الأميرة فلافيا الانتظار في تارلينهيم، فطلبت من المشير ستراكينكز أن يأخذها إلى زيندا في الحال لكي تتمكن من رؤية الملك. كان موكبها يقترب من القلعة عندما كان فريتز عائداً بي من الغابة. عندما شاهدنا الموكب، أختبنت بسرعة خلف شجرة، ولكننا لم ندرك أن الصبي صاحب الحصان الذي أخذه روبرت كان قد اتبعنا. وكان منفعلاً جداً ونادى: "أيها الأميرة! الملك هنا، خلف هذه الشجرة!" حاولنا إبقاء الصبي هادئاً، ولكن الوقت كان قد فات. توقف موكب الأميرة واستطعت أن أرى المشير يميل من نافذة المركبة للتحدث إلى الصبي. قال ستراكينكز: "ما تقوله هو هراء، يرقد الملك مصاباً في القلعة". "لا، حقاً، إنه هنا. لقد حارب الرجل الذي أخذ حصاني."

16-At this moment, Sapt rode out of the castle to meet the party.

**"This boy says the King's over there behind that tree," said Strakencz to Sapt with a strange look.**

**"No, he's in the castle behind me," said Sapt with a smile.**

**"Please, come and see if you don't believe me," said the boy.**

The smile disappeared from Sapt's face and he looked worried, before quickly saying, "I'll go."

**"Let me come, too,"** said the Princess.

Sapt thought for a moment, then said quietly, **"Then come alone."**

The Princess was helped down from the coach. She then walked with Sapt across the grass towards me. I sat down behind the tree, putting my hands over my face. Fritz put his hand on my shoulder.

في هذه اللحظة، خرج ثابت من القلعة لمقابلة الموكب. فقال ستراكينز إلى ثابت بنظرة غريبة: "هذا الصبي يقول أن الملك هناك خلف تلك الشجرة." فقال ثابت وهو يبتسم: "لا، إنه في القلعة خلفي." فقال الصبي: "ارجوك، تعال وانظر إذا كنت لا تصدقني." اختفت الابتسامة من وجه ثابت وبدأ عليه القلق، قبل أن يقول بسرعة: "سوف أرى." وقالت الأميرة: "اسمح لي أن آتي أيضا." فكر ثابت للحظة، ثم قال بهدوء، "إذا تعالي وحدك." ساعدوا الأميرة لتتزلزل من الحافلة. ثم سارت مع ثابت عبر العشب تجاهي. كنت جالسا خلف الشجرة، واضعاً يدي على وجهي. وكان فريتز يضع يده على كتفي.

17-When Princess Flavia saw me, she ran up and cried, **"It is you! Are you hurt?"** I said nothing, so she looked at Sapt and said, **"What's this game you're playing?"**

**"This is not the King,"** said Sapt quietly.

**"What do you mean it's not the King?"** said the Princess.

**"This is not the King,"** said Sapt again.

**"He is the King!"** cried Flavia. **"It's his face! Rudolf, look at me! What's happening?"**

Looking into her eyes, I said, **"Forgive me, Madame. I'm not the King."**

The Princess looked surprised, then frightened, and I could see she did not know what to say.

**"Come,"** Sapt said gently to the Princess. **"It's time you came into the castle. We have much to discuss."**

I watched as she walked away. Now my game was nearly at an end.

عندما رأتني الأميرة فلافيا الأميرة، ركضت نحوي وصاحت: "أنه أنت! هل أنت مصاب؟" لم أقل أي شيء، لذلك نظرت إلى ثابت، وقالت: "ما هذه اللعبة التي تلعبونها؟" فقال ثابت بهدوء: "هذا ليس الملك." قالت الأميرة "ماذا تقصد بأنه ليس الملك؟" فقال ثابت مرة أخرى: "هذا ليس الملك." فصاحت فلافيا: "أنه هو الملك، أنه وجهه! رودولف، أنظر إلي! ما الذي يحدث؟" نظرت في عينيها، وقلت: "سامحيني سيدتي، أنا لست الملك." أندشت الأميرة وخافت وفهمت أنها لا تعرف ماذا تقول. قال ثابت بلطف للأميرة: "تعالي، لقد حان الوقت لتدخل القلعة. لدينا الكثير لنناقشه." شاهدها وهي تمشي بعيداً. الآن كانت لعبتي تقريبا في نهايتها.

18-All that day Fritz and I waited in the forest while the Princess stayed in the castle with the King. That night, when it was dark, Fritz led me to the castle where I stayed, unseen, in the rooms that had been the King's prison.

Johann brought me food and told me what he knew. The King was getting better and had seen the Princess with Sapt, and Marshal Strakencz had returned to Strelsau. Johann also said that everyone was talking about the strange prisoner of Zenda and who he could be. Some said he was an English friend of the King's who had heard about the Duke's plans, so the Duke had locked him up to stop him from speaking to the King.

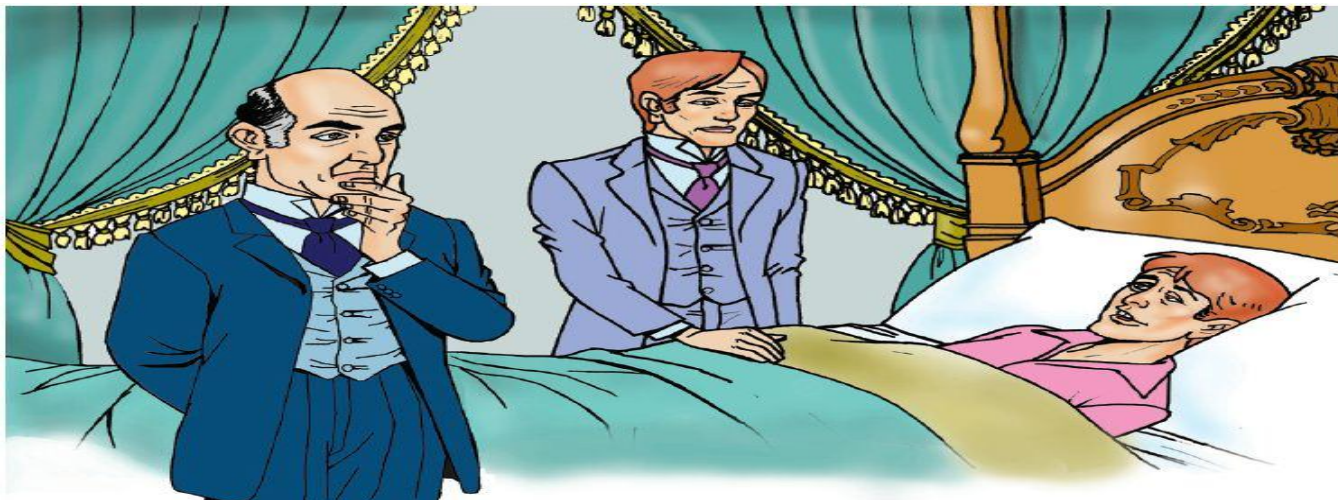
طوال ذلك اليوم، انتظرت أنا وفريتز في الغابة بينما بقيت الأميرة في القلعة مع الملك. وفي تلك الليلة، عندما حل الظلام، أخذني فريتز إلى القلعة حيث مكثت، بعيداً عن مرئي الجميع، في الغرف التي قد تم سجن الملك فيها. جوهان جلب لي الطعام وقال لي كل ما يعرفه. الملك كان يتحسن، ورأى الأميرة حيث أتت مع ثابت، وقد عاد المارشال ستراكينز إلى ستريلسو. وقال جوهان أيضاً أن الجميع كان يتحدث عن سجين زيندرا الغريب ومن يمكن أن يكون. البعض قال أنه صديق إنجليزي للملك والذي كان قد سمع عن خطط الدوق، ولذلك حبسه الدوق لكي يمنعه من التحدث إلى الملك.

19-Later that evening, Fritz came to me and said the King wanted to see me. So I went to his room, where he was lying in bed with a doctor next to him. He looked weak and tired, but smiled when he saw me.

**"Cousin! My friend! You're injured, too. We're always the same, you and I!"**

I smiled and bowed down before him.

**"I want to thank you," he said. "I hoped that tomorrow, you'd come with me to Strelsau and tell everyone about the brave things that you've done, but Sapt tells me that this isn't possible."**  
**"He's right, sir. My work in your country is complete."**



**"Very well, I'll return to Strelsau alone. People know that the King was injured, so they won't be surprised to see me looking a little different. But you've taught me something, cousin Rudolf. You've shown me what a true King should be,"** he said.

**"I'd happily help you again, sir,"** I said. And I meant it, thinking that perhaps I would need to. Nobody knew where Rupert had disappeared too, and the thought of the man who had almost beaten me still makes my heart beat louder in my chest.

في وقت لاحق من هذا المساء، جاء لي فريتز وقال أن الملك يريد أن يراني. فذهبت إلى غرفته، حيث كان يرقد في السرير وهناك طبيب بجواره. كان ضعيفا ومتعبا، لكنه ابتسم عندما رآني: "ابن عمي! صديقي! أنت أصبت أيضاً. نحن دائماً مثل بعضنا، أنت وأنا!" ابتسمت، وانحنيت أمامه. وقال: "أريد أن أشكرك، كنت أأمل أن غدا ستأتي معي إلى ستريلسو وأخبر الجميع عن الأشياء الشجاعة التي قمت بها، ولكن ثابت يقول أن هذا غير ممكن." "أنه على حق، سيدي الرئيس. لقد أكتمل عملي في بلدكم." "جيد جداً، سوف أعود إلى ستريلسو وحدي. الناس يعرفون أن الملك كان قد أصيب، ولذلك لن يندهشوا لرؤيتي وأنا أبداً مختلفاً قليلاً. ولكنك علمتني شيئاً ما، يا ابن عمي رودولف. لقد بينت لي ما ينبغي أن يكون عليه الملك الحقيقي." فقلت: "سأكون سعيداً إن ساعدتك مرة أخرى، يا سيدي." وكنت أعني ذلك، ودار في فكري أنني ربما أضطر لذلك. فلا أحد يعرف أين اختفى روبرت، والتفكير في الرجل الذي هزمني تقريبا، كان لا يزال يجعل قلبي ينبض بصوت أعلى في صدري.

**20-"The Princess has asked to see you, too," said the King. "She can come in now."**

**"Does she know everything?"** I whispered, before she arrived.

**"She does,"** the King answered.

The Princess came into the room and I bowed down to her.

**"It seems you've tricked me,"** she said, but not unkindly.

**"I would like to apologise to you for this,"** I said.

**"You don't need to apologise. I should thank you for all you've done for Ruritania,"** she said.

**"I've learned all about duties and responsibilities,"** I said to her. **"It's a lesson I'll never forget."**

**"And we'll never forget how you've helped the King,"** she replied.

The King smiled, then closed his eyes and fell asleep, and the doctor said it was best if I left him.

I bowed and left the people who would shape the future of Ruritania, not knowing that I would never see the King, the Princess – or Rupert – ever again.

وقال الملك: "الأميرة طلبت أن تراك، أيضاً. قد تأتي الآن." همست قبل وصولها: "وهل هي تعرف كل شيء؟". فأجاب الملك: "نعم". دخلت الأميرة إلى الغرفة وأنحنت لها. بأسلوب ليس بالخشن قالت: "يبدو أنك خدعتني". قلت: "أود أن اعتذر لك عن هذا..". فقالت: "لا تحتاج إلى الاعتذار. بل يجب أن أشرك على كل ما قمت به من أجل روريتانيا". قلت لها: "لقد تعلمت كل شيء عن الواجبات والمسؤوليات، أنه درس لن إنساه أبداً". فأجابت: "ونحن لن ننسى أبداً كيف ساعدت الملك". انتسم الملك، ثم غلق عينيه وغط في النوم، وقال الطبيب أنه من الأفضل لو تركته وذهبت. انحنت، وتركت الناس الذين سيشكلون مستقبل روريتانيا، لا أعرف أن كنت سوف أرى الملك، أو الأميرة – أو روبرت – مرة أخرى في أي وقت لاحق.

21-A few hours later, Sapt and Fritz bowed down to me as I got on a train at a small station near the border with Ruritania. The other passengers on the train must have thought an important person in a large coat and hat was about to leave their country, but it was only I, Rudolf Rassendyll, an English gentleman.

وبعد بضع ساعات، انحنى ثابت وفريتز أمامي عندما صعدت على متن قطار في محطة صغيرة بالقرب من الحدود مع روريتانيا. ومن المؤكد أن الركاب الآخرين على متن القطار قد لاحظوا أن شخصاً مهماً يرتدي معطف كبير وقبعة كان على وشك مغادرة بلدهم، لكنه كان أنا فحسب، رودولف راسينديل، رجل إنجليزي.

When I finally returned to England, I had some explaining to do. My brother Robert and his wife Rose told me that everyone had been looking for me. And Rose was very disappointed when I told her I had not written a book.

**"At least the ambassador has a job for you soon," she said. "He now knows which country he'll be sent to."**

**"Where's that?"** I asked.

**"Ruritania. Sir Jacob Borrodaile is to be the British Ambassador in Strelsau."**

**"I don't think it'd be a good idea for me to work there,"** I said.

**"But you promised you'd take the job!"** cried Rose.

**"You're right, but please look at this,"** I said, showing them a photograph in a newspaper which showed the King's coronation. There was I, with Sapt, Fritz, Michael and the Princess. Robert and Rose looked at it in amazement.

**"Yes, you look very like the King of Ruritania,"** said Rose. **"But this is just an excuse. You could have become an ambassador yourself one day! If you don't go, you'll never be anyone important!"**

عندما عدت أخيراً إلى إنجلترا، كان علي أن أقدم بعض التوضيحات. أخبرني أخي روبرت وزوجته روز أن الجميع كانوا يبحثون عني. وأصببت روز بخيبة أمل كبيرة عندما أخبرتها أنني لم أكتب كتاب. فقالت: "على الأقل ما زال السفير لديه وظيفة لك، أنه يعرف الآن البلد الذي سوف يتم إرساله إليه". سألت: "أين ذلك؟". "روريتانيا. السيد جاكوب بورديل سيكون السفير البريطاني في ستريلسو". قلت: "لا أعتقد أنها ستكون فكرة جيدة بالنسبة لي للعمل هناك". بكت روز: "ولكنك وعدت أنك ستقبل هذه الوظيفة!". قلت: "أنت محقة، ولكن أنظري لهذا". أظهرت لهم صورة في إحدى الصحف والتي تظهر تتويج الملك. كانت صورتي مع ثابت وفريتز ومايكل والأميرة. نظروا روبرت وروز إليها في ذهول. وقالت روز: "نعم، تبدو شبيهاً جداً بملك روريتانيا، ولكن هذه مجرد ذريعة. يمكنك أن تصبح سفيراً يوماً ما! إذا لم تذهب، لن تكون أبداً أي شخص مهم".

22-I knew, however, that I did not need to go. I had been something far more important than an ambassador: I had been a King. I remembered and understood those words Rose had said to me all those months ago: a person with a position in society has responsibilities. But even without a position in society, we all have a duty to help other people when we can, and we all become better people for doing so.

ومع هذا، عرفت أنني لم أكن في حاجة للذهاب. لقد كنت شيئاً أكثر أهمية من سفير: لقد كنت ملك. تذكرت وفهمت تلك الكلمات التي قالتها روز لي طوال تلك الأشهر التي مضت: أي شخص ذو مكانة في المجتمع لديه مسؤوليات. ولكن حتى بدون مكانة في المجتمع، علينا جميعاً واجب

## **Questions & Answers**

**1- Where did Rassendyll wait for it to be two o'clock?**

- He waited by the drawbridge gate بوابة الجسر المتحرك next to the castle.

**2- Why couldn't Johann open the door for Sapt and his men as planned?**

- He was helping the Duke in his fight with Rupert. He was also injured.

**3- Rassendyll has asked Antoinette to cry for help at two o'clock. Why does she do it earlier?**

- Because she is being attacked by Rupert. He wants to punish يعاقب her for writing to Rassendyll.

**4- Why did Rupert strike his sword at Johann?**

- Because he believed that Johann was Rassendyll's spy.

**5- Who killed the Duke?**

- Rupert Hentzau killed the Duke.

**6- How did Rassendyll get the keys to the King's prison?**

- He took them from De Gautet's clothes after he had killed him.

**7- Why was it lucky that Detchard did not have gun?**

- If Detchard had had a gun, he would have shot Rassendyll dead.

**8- What did the doctor do to save the King's life?**

- He held Detchard for some time. He was too weak, so Detchard broke free and killed the doctor with his sword.

**9- How did the king help Rassendyll in the fight against Detchard?**

- He helped Rassendyll by pushing a chair into Detchard as he was fighting. This made him lose his balance and fall over the doctor's body. Then it was easy for Rassendyll to kill him.

**10- How did the King get hurt?**

-Detchard struck the King hard with his sword.

**11- What would have happened if the King hadn't helped Rassendyll? Why?**

- Detchard would have killed Rassendyll because he was a much better swordsman than him.

**12- What happened to Rassendyll before he killed Detchard?**

- Detchard cut him on the arm.

**13- Why did Rupert ride away instead of fighting Rassendyll?**

- Because Fritz came with a gun and Rupert knew he couldn't fight both of them.

**14- What did Rupert do when Antoinette pointed a gun at him?**

- He quickly jumped into the water below the bridge.

**15- How did Rupert manage to escape after he had killed Michael?**

- He jumped out of the window down into the moat below and swam away.

**16- How did Rupert get a horse to escape?**

- He took a horse from a boy in order to escape.

**17- Rassendyll would surely have been killed if it hadn't been for Fritz.**

**Explain.**

- Rupert would have killed Rassendyll if Fritz hadn't arrived on a horse carrying a gun. Rupert understood that he couldn't fight both men, so he escaped.

**18- Why did Duke Michael invite Antoinette de Mauban to Ruritania?**

- He invited her to attend the coronation.

**19- What did the Duke do when he found out that Antoinette had warned Rassendyll in Strelsau?**

- He tricked her by inviting her and her servants to his castle. Once she was there, he didn't let her leave in order to stop her telling anyone about his plan.

**20- How could Antoinette continue to send letters to Rassendyll although she was locked in the castle?**

- She could do that with the help of Johann who worked as a spy for Rassendyll.

**21- What did Sapt ask Johann and Antoinette to do?**

- He asked them to guard the secret about the real King. (He asked them not to tell anyone that the King was a prisoner in the castle).

**22- What were Sapt's men told about the King's wound?**

- They were told that the King was wounded while he was fighting to rescue his friend who was a prisoner in the castle.

**23- What were the people of Strelsau told to justify the King's injury and Michael's death?**

- They were told that the brave King had fought with his brother because he had kept a prisoner in Zenda who was a friend of the King. The Duke had tried to kill the King, who was injured, but the evil Duke had died.



**24- How did the boy make a problem for Sapt, Fritz and Rassendyll?**

- The boy ran out and said the King was behind the tree, but Strakencz and the Princess thought that the King was in the castle. Sapt had a problem to explain this.

**25- Why did Sapt tell the Princess to come alone to see the King behind the tree?**

- He asked the Princess to come alone because he didn't want Marshal Strakencz to know about Rassendyll.

**26- Why did Sapt have the real King taken from his prison with his face covered?**

- Sapt didn't want his men or the servants to see who the prisoner really was.

**27- What did Sapt's men and the servants think happened to the King and to the prisoner?**

- They thought that the King was wounded in the fight to rescue the prisoner, and that the prisoner went after Rupert Hentzau.

**28- Who did the people of Strelsau think Rassendyll could be?**

- They thought he could be an English friend of the King's who heard about the Duke's plans, so the Duke had locked him up to stop him from speaking to the King.

**29- Why did Rassendyll wait in the forest until dark to go to the castle?**

- Rassendyll waited until he could go into the castle under the cover of dark. He didn't want anyone to see him.

**30- Why was the King very grateful to Rassendyll?**

- Because he saved his life and taught him how to be a real King. He also helped to stop people thinking badly about the King.

**31- Why was the Princess grateful to Rassendyll?**

- She was grateful to him for all he had done for Ruritania and the King.

**32- Why did Sapt tell the King that it wasn't possible for Rassendyll to go back to Strelsau?**

- Because that would cause problems as people would mistake him for the King since he looked exactly like the King.

**33- Why did Rose feel very disappointed with Rassendyll?**

- Because he had not written a book and he refused to work with Sir Jacob.

**34- Why did Rassendyll refuse to work for Sir Jacob?**

- Sir Jacob was going to be the ambassador to Ruritania and there would be problems as Rassendyll looked like the King.

**35- How did Rassendyll realize at the end of the story that Rose was right about taking responsibilities?**

- He understood that a person with a position in society has responsibilities and that even without a position in society; we all have a duty to help other people when we can and we all become better people for doing so.

**36- What did Rassendyll learn from his adventures?**

- He learnt responsibility, how to do the right thing.

## **Quotations**

**1- "This woman's been writing secret letters to Rassendyll! She needs to be punished!"**

**1- Who says this to whom?**

- Rupert Hentzau says this to Duke Michael.

**2- Who is "this woman"?**

- "This woman" is Antoinette de Mauban.

**3- What is the speaker doing while saying this**

- He is attacking Antoinette and fighting with Duke Michael.

**2- "She's my guest. It's you who needs to be punished!"**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Michael said this to Rupert.

**2- Who was the guest?**

- Antoinette de Mauban.

**3- Why did the speaker want to punish the addressed person?**

- Because Rupert attacked Antoinette as he believed she was helping Rassendyll.

**3- "We mustn't kill him yet or there'll be trouble."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Detchard said this to Bersonin.

**2- Where was this said?**

- This was said in the castle.

**3- What happened after that?**

- Rassendyll killed both of them

**4- "Come on, Michael! Let's fight!"**

**1- Who said these words?**

- Rupert Hentzau said these words.

**2- Where was that person standing?**

- He was standing on the drawbridge between the castle and the mansion.

**3- Did Michael come out to fight that person? Why? Why not?**

- No, he didn't because he was dead.

**5- "Dead! That's good. Then I'm your leader now. Put down your weapons and do as I say."**

**1- Who says this to whom?**

- Rupert Hentzau says this to the Duke's servants standing near the door of the mansion.

**2- Where is the speaker?**

- He is standing on the drawbridge (between the mansion and castle).

**3- Do the people obey him? What happens?**

- No, they don't obey him. They let Madame de Mauban try to shoot him.

**6- "I made sure that you are the last of the Six Men."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rassendyll said this to Rupert Hentzau.

**2- Where was this said?**

- This was said in the forest of Zenda.

**3- When was this said?**

- This was said when Rassendyll chased Rupert in the forest to kill him after he had killed the rest of Michael's Six Men.

**7- "Why didn't you follow my plan? We could have worked well together."**

**1- Who says this to whom?**

- Rupert Hentzau says this to Rassendyll.

**2- Where are they and what has just happened?**

- They are in the forest near the castle. Rupert has killed the Duke; Rassendyll has killed the others of the Six Men and rescued the King.

**3- What was the plan that wasn't followed?**

- Rassendyll would attack when Rupert said to. The King, the Duke, Sapt, and Fritz would all die. Rassendyll would remain the King and Hentzau would be rewarded.

**8- "Thanks to you, he is. But you're injured. Here, let me help you."**

**1- Who said this to whom and where?**

- Fritz said this to Rassendyll in the forest of Zenda.

**2- What did "Thanks to you" mean?**

- It meant that the King was safe thanks to Rassendyll's help.

**3- How was the addressed person injured?**

- He was injured when Detchard cut him on the arm while Rassendyll was trying to save the King.

**9- "What you say is nonsense. The King's injured in the castle."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Strakencz said this to the boy whose horse had been taken by Rupert.

**2- What did the addressed person say before this?**

- He said the King was behind a tree in the forest of Zenda.

**3- Was the addressed person right? Why? Why not?**

- He was not right. He thought that Rassendyll was the real King.

**10- "He is the King! It's his face!"**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Princess Flavia said this to Sapt.

**2- Where and when was this said?**

- This was said in the forest of Zenda when they met Rassendyll and Sapt told the Princess that Rassendyll was not the real King.

**3- Why did most people think that Rassendyll was the real King?**

- He looked so much like the King.

**11- "Cousin! My friend! You're injured, too. We're always the same, you and I!"**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- The King (Rudolf Elphberg) to Rassendyll.

**2- Where and when was this said?**

- They were in a bedroom in the mansion when Rassendyll went to see the King.

**3- How were both men injured?**

- They were both injured by Detchard when Rassendyll tried to rescue the King.

**12- "People know that the King was injured, so they won't be surprised to see me looking a little different."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rudolf Elphberg (the King) said this to Rassendyll.

**2- Where and when was this said?**

- They were in a bedroom in the mansion when Rassendyll went to see the King

**3- What were the people told about the King's injury?**

- They were told that the brave King had fought with his brother because he had kept a prisoner in Zenda who was a friend of the King. The Duke had tried to kill the King, who was injured, but the evil Duke had died.

**13- "But you've taught me something, Cousin Rudolf. You've shown me what a true King should be."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rudolf Elphberg said this to Rassendyll.

**2- How did that person teach the speaker what a true King should be?**

- He took his responsibilities as King seriously and tried to run the country well. He risked his own life to rescue the King. He could have remained King.

**3- Where did the addressed person go after that?**

- He went back to England.

**14- "I would like to apologise to you for this."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rassendyll said this to Princess Flavia.

**2- Where and when was this said?**

- This was said in a bedroom in the mansion when Rassendyll went there to see the King.

**3- Why did the speaker apologize to the addressed person?**

- He apologized because he tricked her when he pretended to be the King and she thought he was the real King.

**15- "I should thank you for all you've done for Ruritania. And we'll never forget how you've helped the King."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Princess Flavia said this to Rassendyll.

**2- What did the addressed person do for Ruritania and the King?**

- When Michael kidnapped the King, Rassendyll agreed to pretend to be the King to stop Michael from taking the crown. He also risked his life and saved the King from death.

**3- Where was this said?**

- In the mansion.

**16- "I don't think it'd be a good idea for me to work there."**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rudolf Rassendyll said this to Rose.

**2- Which job did the speaker refuse to do?**

- It was the assistant to the new British ambassador in Ruritania.

**3- Why did the speaker refuse that job?**

- He knew it would cause problems for him to be in Ruritania because he looked so much like the King of Ruritania.

**17- "But you promised you'd take the job!"**

**1- Who said this to whom?**

- Rose said this to Rassendyll.

**2- When was this said?**

- This was said when Rassendyll came back from Ruritania.

**3- What did the addressed person promise to do?**

- He promised to work for Sir Jacob who was going to become an ambassador.

## Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- 1- Antoinette de Mauban called for help **at the appointed time**. (almost an hour early)
- 2- Johann **was** seriously hurt in the fighting. (was not)
- 3- When Rassendyll enters the prison, **De Gautet and Hentzau** were there. (Bersonin and Detchard)
- 4- The doctor tried to protect **the Duke**. (the King)
- 5- The Duke's servants did not accept **Detchard** as their leader. (Rupert)
- 6- Rassendyll **did not wound Rupert** before he escapes. (managed to cut Rupert's cheek)
- 7- Rupert thinks that if the Duke was dead, **Robert** would remain King and reward him. (Rassendyll)
- 8- Johann and **Rose** knew that the prisoner was the King. (Antoinette)
- 9- Rassendyll spends the day **in the mansion in the room with the King**. (in the forest)
- 10- The King wants Rassendyll to come to **Zenda**. (Strelsau)
- 11- Back home, Rassendyll **agreed** to work with Sir Jacob Borrodaile. (refused)
- 12- Rupert and Michael fought when Rupert wanted to punish **Johann**. (Antoinette)
- 13- The Duke invited Antoinette to his **hunting lodge** and doesn't let her leave. (castle)
- 14- **The Duke** took a horse from a boy in order to escape. (Rupert)
- 15- Rupert stood on the bridge and called to Michael, not knowing he was **alive**. (dead)
- 16- Rupert discovered that Antoinette was helping **Detchard**. (Rassendyll)
- 17- The Duke invited Antoinette to Ruritania for the **funeral**. (coronation)
- 18- The Duke learnt that Antoinette warned **Rupert** in the summer house. (Rassendyll)
- 19- Rassendyll returned to **Germany** but told his family nothing of his adventure. (England)
- 20- People were told that the rescued prisoner was a friend of the **Duke**. (king)
- 21- Rassendyll went to **Strelsau** and rescued the King. (Zenda)
- 22- Sapt's men were told that the King was **killed** while fighting to rescue the prisoner. (wounded)
- 23- De Gautet, Bersonin and Detchard were killed by **the Duke**. (Rassendyll)
- 24- Marshal Strakencz brought Antoinette from Tarlenheim to see the King. (the Princess)
- 25- Rassendyll taught the King how to be a **pretend** king. (real)

## Homework ((A))

### A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- What did Rassendyll do after Rupert disappeared into the mansion?
- 2- Who were left to protect the real king?
- 3- Why did Antoinette give a real cry at one o'clock in the morning?
- 4- How did Rassendyll get ready after the cry?
- 5- Why did Rupert go to Antoinette room?
- 6- What was Michael's reaction to Rupert's accusation about Antoinette?
- 7- How did the argument between Michael and Rupert end?
- 8- Why did Rupert strike his sword at Johann?
- 9- Why was Rassendyll worried about Johann's life after that stab طعنة ?
- 10- How far was Johann's life important to Rassendyll ?
- 11- How did Rassendyll make use of killing De Gautet?
- 12- Why was Rassendyll relieved when he opened the 2nd door?
- 13- The brave doctor paid his life for his honesty and his loyalty . **Illustrate** .
- 14- Why couldn't the king help the doctor?
- 15- How was Rassendyll lucky when he fought with Detchard?

- 16- Why was it dangerous to fight against Detchard?
- 17- But for the king's help, Rassendyll would soon have died. **Discuss**
- 18- Why was Rassendyll happy when he heard the king moaning يئن?
- 19- How was Antoinette was about to kill Rupert?
- 20- When did Rassendyll decide to chase Rupert?
- 21- Why did Rupert swim faster than Rassendyll?
- 22- How did Rassendyll catch up with Rupert? How was Rupert a kind thief?
- 23- Why did Rassendyll tell Rupert that he was the last of the Six Men?
- 24- How did the arrival of Fritz save Rassendyll from certain death موت محقق?
- 25- Rupert was wise when he didn't fight with Rassendyll in the forest. **Discuss.**

**B) Read the following quotation and answer the questions:**

1- *"Help. Michael! It's Rupert Hentzau!"*

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) Why did the speaker ask for help?
- c) What did Michael do?

2- *"She's my guest. It's you who needs to be punished."*

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) Who was the guest?
- c) Why did the speaker want to punish the addressed person?

3- *"We mustn't kill him yet or there'll be trouble."*

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) Where was this said ?
- c) What happened after that ?

4- *"What did you do at the castle?"*

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) Where were they?
- c) How did the listener escape death?

**C) Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:**

- 1- Rassendyll hid his horse in the trees and waited near the inn
- 2- Antoinette cried for help when Michael went into her room.
- 3- After a sword fight Rupert managed to save Michael
- 4- Detchard was a much better gunman
- 5- After killing De Gautet , Rassendyll took the locks
- 6- The doctor saved the Duke when he held Detchard
- 7- Rassendyll killed the three Ruritanian of the famous Six
- 8- The king helped Rassendyll to kill De Gautet
- 9- Sapt saved Rassendyll from certain death.
- 10- Rupert stabbed Johann accusing him of being a servant
- 11- Sapt helped Antoinette to send letters to Rassendyll
- 12- Johann fought the Duke and killed him .

**Homework ((B))**

**A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Why didn't Fritz obey Rassendyll to go after Rupert?
- 2- Why was the boy surprised when Rassendyll ask about the king?
- 3- Why did Antoinette change her attitude towards the Duke?
- 4- Why did the Duke decide to punish Antoinette de Mauban?
- 5- How did the Duke trick Antoinette de Mauban?



- 6- How was Antoinette still able to send letters to Rassendyll ?
- 7- Why did Rupert choose the wrong time to punish Antoinette?
- 8- How did Michael meet his end?
- 9- What wrong idea did Rupert have about Rassendyll?
- 10- Who looked after the poor king?
- 11-What did Colonel Sapt ask Antoinette and Johann to do?
- 12- What did his men and the servants think about the king's injury?
- 13-Why didn't the people of Strelsau sympathize with مع يتعاطف the Duke's death?
- 14- Why did Rassendyll hide behind a tree when he was with Fritz?
- 15- Why did the Princess look surprised , then frightened?
- 16-Where did Rassendyll stay in the castle?
- 17-According to the people, why did the Duke lock the prisoner of Zenda up?
- 18- Who objected to the king's idea to take Rassendyll to Strelsau? Why?
- 19-Why did the king think that people wouldn't be surprised to see him different?
- 20-Give four reasons why the king greatly indebted مدين to Rassendyll?
- 21-What made Rassendyll's heart beat louder in his chest?
- 22-The Princess wasn't angry with Rassendyll despite tricking her. **Discuss.**
- 23- What was the lesson that Rassendyll would never forget?
- 24-What did Rassendyll teach the king?
- 25-What did the train passengers think when Sapt and Fritz bowed to Rassendyll?
- 26-Why was Rose disappointed?
- 27-Which country would Sir Jacob Borrodaile work in?
- 28-What excuse did Rassendyll give for not accepting the job in Ruritania?
- 29-Why did Rassendyll realise that he didn't need to be an ambassador there?
- 30-Rassendyll became wise after his experience as a king. **Illustrate.**

**B) Read the following quotation and answer the questions:**

**1- "Thanks to you, he is. But you're injured. Here, let me help you."**

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) What did ' **Thanks to you** ' mean?
- c) How was the addressed person injured ?

**2- "This boy says the king's over there behind that tree. "**

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) When and where was this said ?
- c) Was the boy right ? Why ? Why not ?

**3- "I would like to apologize to you for this."**

- a) Who said these words to whom?
- b) Where and when was this said?
- c) Why did the speaker apologize to the addressed person?

**4- "He's right, sir. My work in your country is complete."**

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) What does "**he**" refer to?
- c) What was the occasion?

**5- "But you promised you'd take the job. "**

- a) Who said these words ? To whom ?
- b) Which job did the speaker refer to?

c)What made the listener change his attitude towards the job?

**C) Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:**

- 1-Flavia and a doctor were looking after the king
- 2-People knew that the king fought Michael to save an enemy of him.
- 3- Flavia ordered The Marshall to take her to Strelsau to see the king.
- 4- The boy whose horse Rassendyll took followed him
- 5- Rassendyll sat behind a wall so as not to be seen by the Princess
- 6-The boy told the Princess about Sapt's hidden place.
- 7-Sapt told the Princess that Rassendyll was the real king
- 8-Rassendyll stayed unseen in the rooms that had been the Princess's prison
- 9-Rassendyll apologized for insulting the Princess.
- 10- The Princess thanked Rassendyll for what he had done for Paris.
- 11-Rose was happy when Rassendyll told her that he didn't write a book
- 12-Sir Jacob 's work as an ambassador would be in France
- 13-Rassendyll accepted to work with the ambassador in Ruritania .

لِلدَّيْتِ اَوَّلُ الْاَعْلَانِ  
١٢٠٧١٧٠٢٦٤